



# *RTXC Kernel Services Reference, Volume 1*

*Levels, Threads, Exceptions, Pipes,  
Event Sources, Counters, and  
Alarms*

## Disclaimer

Quadros Systems, Inc. makes no representations or warranties with respect to the contents or use of this manual, and specifically disclaims any express or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Quadros Systems, Inc. reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes to its content, at any time, without obligation to notify any person or entity of such revisions or changes.

Quadros Systems, Inc. makes no representations or warranties with respect to any Quadros software, and specifically disclaims any express or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Quadros Systems, Inc. reserves the right to make changes to any and all parts of Quadros software, at any time, without any obligation to notify any person or entity of such changes.

## Trademarks

Quadros is a registered trademark of Quadros Systems, Inc. **RTXC**, **RTXC Quadros**, and **RTXC DSP** are trademarks of Quadros Systems, Inc.

Other product and company names mentioned in this document may be the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Copyright © 2002 Quadros Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, photocopied, stored on a retrieval system, or transmitted without the express written consent of the publisher.

Quadros Systems, Inc.  
10450 Stancliff, Suite 110  
Houston, TX 77099-4336  
USA

*RTXC Kernel Services Reference, Volume 1*  
Part Number: RTXC-KSRV1-0602  
June 2002  
**RTXC** Kernel, Version 1.0

# Contents

---

<b>CHAPTER 1</b>	<b>Introduction To RTXC/ss Kernel Services</b> .....	1
	Using This Manual.....	2
	Kernel Service Description Format.....	2
	Prototypes .....	2
	General Form of Kernel Service Call .....	4
	Arguments to Kernel Services.....	5
	Kernel Service Return Codes .....	5
	Diagnostic Mode and Fatal Errors .....	5
	Kernel Service Classes .....	7
	<b>RTXC/ss</b> Component Services .....	8
	Thread Management Services.....	8
	Exception Services.....	11
	Pipe Services.....	12
	Event Source Management Services.....	14
	Counter Management Services .....	16
	Alarm Management Services .....	18
	Special Services .....	20
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>	<b>Thread Services</b> .....	21
	XX_ClearThreadGateBits.....	23
	XX_DecrThreadGate .....	26
	XX_DefThreadArg.....	28
	XX_DefThreadEntry .....	30
	XX_DefThreadEnvArg .....	32
	KS_DefThreadName .....	34
	XX_DefThreadProp.....	36
	TS_DisableThreadScheduler .....	38
	TS_EnableThreadScheduler .....	39
	TS_GetThreadArg.....	40
	TS_GetThreadBaseLevel .....	42

	KS_GetThreadClassProp .....	44
	TS_GetThreadCurrentLevel .....	47
	XX_GetThreadEnvArg .....	48
	XX_GetThreadGate .....	50
	TS_GetThreadGateLoadPreset .....	52
	XX_GetThreadGatePreset .....	54
	TS_GetThreadID .....	55
	KS_GetThreadName .....	56
	XX_GetThreadProp .....	58
	XX_IncrThreadGate .....	60
	KS_LookupThread .....	62
	TS_LowerThreadLevel .....	64
	XX_ORThreadGateBits .....	66
	XX_PresetThreadGate .....	68
	TS_RaiseThreadLevel .....	70
	XX_ScheduleThread .....	72
	XX_ScheduleThreadArg .....	75
	XX_SetThreadGate .....	78
	XX_SetThreadGatePreset .....	80
	INIT_ThreadClassProp .....	82
	XX_UnscheduleThread .....	84
<b>CHAPTER 3</b>	<b>Exception Services .....</b>	<b>87</b>
	KS_CloseException .....	88
	KS_DefExceptionName .....	90
	XX_DefExceptionProp .....	92
	INIT_ExceptionClassProp .....	94
	KS_GetExceptionClassProp .....	96
	KS_GetExceptionName .....	98
	XX_GetExceptionProp .....	100
	KS_LookupException .....	102
	KS_OpenException .....	104
	KS_UseException .....	107
<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	<b>Pipe Services .....</b>	<b>109</b>
	KS_ClosePipe .....	110
	XX_DefPipeAction .....	112
	XX_DefPipeProp .....	115
	KS_DefPipeName .....	118
	XX_GetEmptyPipeBuf .....	120

XX_GetFullPipeBuf.....	122
XX_GetPipeBufSize .....	124
KS_GetPipeClassProp .....	126
KS_GetPipeName .....	128
XX_GetPipeProp .....	130
XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf .....	132
XX_JamFullPipeBuf .....	136
KS_LookupPipe .....	138
KS_OpenPipe.....	140
INIT_PipeClassProp.....	142
XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf.....	144
XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf.....	147
XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf .....	149
XX_PutFullPipeBuf.....	152
KS_UsePipe .....	154

## **CHAPTER 5      Event Source Services.....157**

XX_ClearEventSourceAttr.....	158
KS_CloseEventSource .....	160
KS_DefEventSourceName .....	162
XX_DefEventSourceProp .....	164
INIT_EventSourceClassProp .....	167
XX_GetEventSourceAcc.....	169
KS_GetEventSourceClassProp .....	171
KS_GetEventSourceName .....	173
XX_GetEventSourceProp .....	175
KS_LookupEventSource.....	177
KS_OpenEventSource .....	179
XX_ProcessEventSourceTick.....	181
XX_SetEventSourceAcc.....	183
XX_SetEventSourceAttr .....	185
KS_UseEventSource.....	187

## **CHAPTER 6      Counter Services.....189**

XX_ClearCounterAttr.....	190
KS_CloseCounter .....	192
INIT_CounterClassProp .....	194
KS_DefCounterName .....	196
XX_DefCounterProp .....	198
XX_GetCounterAcc .....	202

	KS_GetCounterClassProp .....	204
	KS_GetCounterName .....	206
	XX_GetCounterProp.....	208
	XX_GetElapsedCounterTicks.....	210
	KS_LookupCounter.....	214
	KS_OpenCounter .....	216
	XX_SetCounterAcc .....	218
	XX_SetCounterAttr .....	220
	KS_UseCounter.....	222
<b>CHAPTER 7</b>	<b>Alarm Services .....</b>	<b>225</b>
	XX_AbortAlarm .....	226
	INIT_AlarmClassProp .....	228
	XX_ArmAlarm .....	230
	XX_CancelAlarm.....	232
	KS_CloseAlarm .....	234
	XX_DefAlarmAction.....	236
	XX_DefAlarmActionArm .....	238
	KS_DefAlarmName .....	240
	XX_DefAlarmProp.....	242
	KS_DefAlarmSema.....	244
	KS_GetAlarmClassProp .....	246
	KS_GetAlarmName .....	248
	XX_GetAlarmProp.....	250
	KS_GetAlarmSema .....	252
	XX_GetAlarmTicks .....	254
	KS_LookupAlarm.....	256
	KS_OpenAlarm .....	258
	XX_RearmAlarm.....	260
	KS_TestAlarm .....	262
	KS_TestAlarmT.....	265
	KS_TestAlarmW .....	268
	KS_UseAlarm.....	270
<b>CHAPTER 8</b>	<b>Special Services .....</b>	<b>273</b>
	XX_AllocSysRAM .....	274
	XX_DefFatalErrorHandler .....	276
	XX_GetFatalErrorHandler .....	278
	XX_GetFreeSysRAMSize .....	279
	KS_GetSysProp .....	280

KS\_GetVersion .....282

INIT\_SysProp .....284

**A P P E N D I X A      Fatal Error Codes .....287**

**I N D E X .....291**





# List of Tables

---

<b>Table 1-1</b>	Kernel Service Description Format.....	3
<b>Table 1-2</b>	Kernel Service Return Value Types .....	6
<b>Table 1-3</b>	Thread Services Summary .....	8
<b>Table 1-4</b>	Exception Services Summary.....	11
<b>Table 1-5</b>	Pipe Services Summary .....	12
<b>Table 1-6</b>	Event Source Services Summary .....	14
<b>Table 1-7</b>	Counter Services Summary .....	16
<b>Table 1-8</b>	Alarm Services Summary .....	18
<b>Table 1-9</b>	Special Services Summary .....	20
<b>Table 2-1</b>	Thread Class Attributes and Masks .....	45
<b>Table 3-1</b>	Exception Class Attributes and Masks.....	96
<b>Table 4-1</b>	Pipe Class Attributes and Masks.....	127
<b>Table 5-1</b>	Event Source Attributes and Masks .....	164
<b>Table 5-2</b>	Event Source Class Attributes and Masks .....	171
<b>Table 6-1</b>	Counter Attributes and Masks .....	198
<b>Table 6-2</b>	Counter Class Attributes and Masks .....	204
<b>Table 7-1</b>	Alarm Class Attributes and Masks .....	246
<b>Table 8-1</b>	System Attributes and Masks.....	284



# List of Examples

---

<b>Example 2-1</b>	Clear Thread Gate Bits.....	24
<b>Example 2-2</b>	Decrement Thread Gate .....	27
<b>Example 2-3</b>	Define Thread Argument Pointer .....	29
<b>Example 2-4</b>	Define Thread Entry Point .....	31
<b>Example 2-5</b>	Define Thread Environment Arguments Pointer.....	33
<b>Example 2-6</b>	Define Dynamic Thread Name .....	35
<b>Example 2-7</b>	Thread Properties Structure .....	36
<b>Example 2-8</b>	Define Thread Properties .....	37
<b>Example 2-9</b>	Disable Thread Scheduling .....	38
<b>Example 2-10</b>	Enable Thread Scheduling .....	39
<b>Example 2-11</b>	Get Thread Argument.....	41
<b>Example 2-12</b>	Read Thread Base Execution Priority Level.....	43
<b>Example 2-13</b>	Object Class Properties Structure .....	44
<b>Example 2-14</b>	Read Thread Object Class Properties .....	46
<b>Example 2-15</b>	Read Thread Execution Priority Level.....	47
<b>Example 2-16</b>	Read Thread Environment Arguments Pointer .....	49
<b>Example 2-17</b>	Read Thread Gate.....	51
<b>Example 2-18</b>	Read and Preset Thread Gate .....	53
<b>Example 2-19</b>	Read Thread Gate Preset .....	54
<b>Example 2-20</b>	Read Current Thread ID .....	55
<b>Example 2-21</b>	Read Thread Name .....	57
<b>Example 2-22</b>	Read Thread Properties .....	59
<b>Example 2-23</b>	Increment Thread Gate .....	61
<b>Example 2-24</b>	Look Up Thread by Name .....	63
<b>Example 2-25</b>	Lower Current Thread Execution Priority Level .....	65
<b>Example 2-26</b>	Set Thread Gate Bits .....	67
<b>Example 2-27</b>	Set Thread Gate with Thread Gate Preset .....	69
<b>Example 2-28</b>	Raise Current Thread Execution Priority Level.....	71
<b>Example 2-29</b>	Schedule Thread Execution .....	73
<b>Example 2-30</b>	Schedule Thread Execution with New Argument.....	77

<b>Example 2-31</b>	Set Thread Gate and Thread Gate Preset.....	79
<b>Example 2-32</b>	Set Thread Gate Preset.....	81
<b>Example 2-33</b>	Initialize Thread Object Class.....	83
<b>Example 2-34</b>	Unschedule Thread Execution.....	85
<b>Example 3-1</b>	Close Exception.....	89
<b>Example 3-2</b>	Define Exception Name .....	91
<b>Example 3-3</b>	Exception Properties Structure.....	92
<b>Example 3-4</b>	Define Exception Properties .....	93
<b>Example 3-5</b>	Initialize Exception Object Class .....	95
<b>Example 3-6</b>	Read Exception Object Class Properties .....	97
<b>Example 3-7</b>	Read Exception Name .....	98
<b>Example 3-8</b>	Read Exception Properties .....	101
<b>Example 3-9</b>	Look Up Exception by Name .....	103
<b>Example 3-10</b>	Allocate and Name Exception .....	105
<b>Example 3-11</b>	Read Exception Handle and Register It .....	108
<b>Example 4-1</b>	Close Pipe Upon Receiving Signal.....	111
<b>Example 4-2</b>	Define Pipe End Action Operation.....	114
<b>Example 4-3</b>	Pipe Properties Structure.....	115
<b>Example 4-4</b>	Define Pipe Properties .....	117
<b>Example 4-5</b>	Define Dynamic Pipe Name .....	119
<b>Example 4-6</b>	Get Empty Buffer from Pipe.....	121
<b>Example 4-7</b>	Get Full Buffer from Pipe .....	123
<b>Example 4-8</b>	Read Pipe Buffer Size.....	125
<b>Example 4-9</b>	Read Pipe Object Class Properties .....	127
<b>Example 4-10</b>	Read Pipe Name .....	129
<b>Example 4-11</b>	Read Pipe Properties .....	131
<b>Example 4-12</b>	Perform Fast Buffer Exchange at Front of Pipe .....	134
<b>Example 4-13</b>	Put Full Buffer at Front of Pipe.....	137
<b>Example 4-14</b>	Look Up Pipe by Name .....	139
<b>Example 4-15</b>	Allocate Dynamic Pipe .....	141
<b>Example 4-16</b>	Initialize Pipe Object Class .....	143
<b>Example 4-17</b>	Perform Consumer Fast Buffer Exchange on Pipe.....	146
<b>Example 4-18</b>	Return Empty Buffer to Pipe .....	148
<b>Example 4-19</b>	Perform Fast Producer Buffer Exchange on Pipe .....	151
<b>Example 4-20</b>	Put Full Buffer into Pipe.....	153
<b>Example 4-21</b>	Read Pipe Handle and Register It .....	155
<b>Example 5-1</b>	Clear Event Source Attribute .....	159
<b>Example 5-2</b>	Close Event Source .....	161
<b>Example 5-3</b>	Assign Event Source Name.....	163
<b>Example 5-4</b>	Event Source Properties Structure .....	164

<b>Example 5-5</b>	Define Event Source Properties .....	165
<b>Example 5-6</b>	Initialize Event Source Object Class Properties .....	168
<b>Example 5-7</b>	Read Event Source Accumulator .....	170
<b>Example 5-8</b>	Read Event Source Object Class Properties .....	172
<b>Example 5-9</b>	Read Event Source Name .....	174
<b>Example 5-10</b>	Read Event Source Properties .....	176
<b>Example 5-11</b>	Look Up Event Source by Name .....	178
<b>Example 5-12</b>	Allocate and Name Event Source .....	180
<b>Example 5-13</b>	Process Source Event for Clock Tick .....	182
<b>Example 5-14</b>	Set Event Source Accumulator .....	184
<b>Example 5-15</b>	Set Event Source Attribute Bits .....	186
<b>Example 5-16</b>	Read Event Source Handle and Register It .....	188
<b>Example 6-1</b>	Clear Counter Attribute .....	191
<b>Example 6-2</b>	Close Counter .....	193
<b>Example 6-3</b>	Initialize Counter Object Class Properties .....	195
<b>Example 6-4</b>	Assign Counter Name .....	197
<b>Example 6-5</b>	Counter Properties Structure .....	198
<b>Example 6-6</b>	Define Counter Properties .....	201
<b>Example 6-7</b>	Read Counter Accumulator .....	203
<b>Example 6-8</b>	Read Counter Object Class Properties .....	205
<b>Example 6-9</b>	Read Counter Name .....	207
<b>Example 6-10</b>	Read Counter Properties .....	209
<b>Example 6-11</b>	Obtain Elapsed Counter Ticks between Two Events .....	212
<b>Example 6-12</b>	Look Up Counter by Name .....	215
<b>Example 6-13</b>	Allocate and Name Counter .....	217
<b>Example 6-14</b>	Set Counter Accumulator .....	219
<b>Example 6-15</b>	Set Counter Attribute Bits .....	221
<b>Example 6-16</b>	Read Counter Handle and Register It .....	223
<b>Example 7-1</b>	Abort Alarm .....	227
<b>Example 7-2</b>	Initialize Alarm Object Class .....	229
<b>Example 7-3</b>	Arm Alarm .....	231
<b>Example 7-4</b>	Cancel Alarm .....	233
<b>Example 7-5</b>	Close Alarm .....	235
<b>Example 7-6</b>	Define Alarm End Action Operation .....	237
<b>Example 7-7</b>	Arm Alarm and Define Alarm Expiration Action Operation .....	239
<b>Example 7-8</b>	Define Alarm Name .....	241
<b>Example 7-9</b>	Alarm Properties Structure .....	242
<b>Example 7-10</b>	Define Alarm Properties .....	243
<b>Example 7-11</b>	Define Alarm Semaphore .....	245
<b>Example 7-12</b>	Read Alarm Object Class Properties .....	247

<b>Example 7-13</b>	Read Alarm Name .....	248
<b>Example 7-14</b>	Read Alarm Properties .....	251
<b>Example 7-15</b>	Read Alarm Semaphore .....	253
<b>Example 7-16</b>	Read Number of Counter Ticks Remaining on Alarm .....	255
<b>Example 7-17</b>	Look Up Alarm by Name .....	257
<b>Example 7-18</b>	Allocate and Name Alarm .....	259
<b>Example 7-19</b>	Rearm and Restart Alarm from Zone 3 .....	261
<b>Example 7-20</b>	Test Alarm.....	263
<b>Example 7-21</b>	Test Alarm—Wait Number of Ticks for Expiration .....	267
<b>Example 7-22</b>	Test Alarm—Wait for Expiration.....	269
<b>Example 7-23</b>	Read Alarm Handle and Register It .....	271
<b>Example 8-1</b>	Allocate System RAM from Zone 3.....	275
<b>Example 8-2</b>	Define Fatal Error Function.....	277
<b>Example 8-3</b>	Read Fatal Error Function.....	278
<b>Example 8-4</b>	Read Amount of Available System RAM from Zone 3 .....	279
<b>Example 8-5</b>	System Properties Structure .....	280
<b>Example 8-6</b>	Read System Properties .....	280
<b>Example 8-7</b>	Read Version Number.....	283
<b>Example 8-8</b>	Initialize Kernel Properties .....	286

# Introduction To RTX/SS Kernel Services

---

## In This Chapter

We discuss the contents of this manual, then list the **RTX/SS** kernel services by class and briefly describe each service.

Using This Manual.....	2
Kernel Service Description Format .....	2
Prototypes .....	2
General Form of Kernel Service Call .....	4
Arguments to Kernel Services .....	5
Kernel Service Return Codes .....	5
Diagnostic Mode and Fatal Errors .....	5
Kernel Service Classes .....	7
RTX/SS Component Services .....	8
Thread Management Services.....	8
Exception Services .....	11
Pipe Services .....	12
Event Source Management Services.....	14
Counter Management Services .....	16
Alarm Management Services .....	18
Special Services .....	20

## Using This Manual



---

**Note:** The *RTXC Kernel Services Reference, Volume 1* contains information needed by users of both the Single Stack and the Dual Mode configurations of the **RTXC** Kernel. If you purchase the Single Stack configuration (**RTXC/ss** only) of the **RTXC** Kernel, you receive only Volume 1 of this book.

The *RTXC Kernel Services Reference, Volume 2* contains information needed by users of the Dual Mode configuration of the **RTXC** Kernel. If you purchase the Dual Mode configuration (both **RTXC/ss** and **RTXC/ms**), you receive both Volume 1 and Volume 2.

---

Kernel services are the functions performed by a real time kernel. This manual describes the complete set of kernel services available in the **RTXC** Kernel. This section describes the types of information and the organization of that information in this manual.

## Kernel Service Description Format

The remaining chapters of this manual describe each kernel service in detail. The chapters separate the services into classes or subclasses, and the descriptions are in alphabetical order of the service name minus the service prefix within each class or subclass. Each description includes a complete explanation of the kernel service function, according to the topics listed in Table 1-1 on page 3.

## Prototypes

The Synopsis section of each service description shows the formal ANSI C declaration and argument prototype for that service. These prototypes come from the **rtxcapi.h** file, which is included with each **RTXC** RTOS Software Development Kit (SDK). Because the **RTXC** Kernel is designed with portability in mind, the API defined in the **rtxcapi.h** file is essentially identical for all **RTXC** RTOS SDKs. However, there are differences between some of the processors on



which the **RTXC** Kernel operates that lead to variations in the size of certain parameters used by the kernel services.

Similarly, there may be syntactical differences between C compilers from different manufacturers. For example, one C compiler may use the key words `near` and `far` to permit different memory models due to the processor's architecture, whereas a compiler targeted to a different processor may not require the `near` and `far` keywords.

**Table 1-1.** Kernel Service Description Format

Name	Brief Functional Description
<b>Zones</b>	The zonal prefixes supported by the service ( <code>IS_</code> , <code>TS_</code> , <code>KS_</code> ), if more than one. <sup>a</sup>
<b>Synopsis</b>	The formal ANSI C declaration including argument prototyping.
<b>Inputs</b>	A brief description of each input argument.
<b>Description</b>	A complete description of what the service does, the data types it uses, and so on.
<b>Outputs</b>	A description of each argument modified by the service and each possible return value from the service.
<b>Example</b>	<p>One or more typical uses of the service. The examples assume the syntax of ANSI Standard C.<sup>b</sup></p> <p><i>SELFTASK</i> is used in many of the examples to denote the Current Task. It is defined in <b>rtxcapi.h</b> as <code>(TASK) 0</code>.</p> <p><i>SELFTHREAD</i> is used in many of the examples to denote the Current Thread. It is defined in <b>rtxcapi.h</b> as <code>(THREAD) 0</code>.</p> <p>The <i>putline</i> function moves the content of a character buffer to an assumed console device.</p>

**Table 1-1.** Kernel Service Description Format (*continued*)

Name	Brief Functional Description
See Also	A list of related kernel services, if any, that could be examined in conjunction with the current function.
Special Notes	Additional notes and technical comments, if any.
<div>a. Services that support more than one zone are listed with an <code>XX_</code> prefix. The <code>XX_</code> prefix is not a valid prefix, only a placeholder.</div> <div>b. The code examples in this manual often refer to functions or entities outside the given code fragment used in the example. The functions or entities so referenced may be real or assumed within the actual context of the code example but are not shown. The purpose of such references is to add coherence to the example rather than to imply a particular methodology or usage.</div>	

## General Form of Kernel Service Call

The general form of an **RTXC** Kernel service function call is:

```
xx_name ([arg1][, arg2]...[, argn])
```

where the service prefix character string `XX_` is one of the following:

- `IS_`     Identifies a service callable from an exception handler in Zone 1.
- `TS_`     Identifies a thread-based service callable from Zone 2.
- `KS_`     Identifies a service callable from Zone 3.

Some services are callable from all three zones, others from zones 2 and 3, and still others from Zone 2 or Zone 3 only. The detailed descriptions of the services in this book include the zones from which the service can be called if it can be called from more than one.

Following the service prefix is the name of the **RTXC** Kernel service. The service prefix should prevent the name from being misidentified by a linker with some similarly-named function in the runtime library of the compiler. In general, *name* is composed as follows:

```
<Verb><Class>[noun|property][suffix]
```

where the strings within the angle brackets (<>) are mandatory and those within the brackets ([]) are optional. The vertical bar (|) indicates an OR. Therefore, the general composition of name is a verb, followed by the object class, followed by an optional noun or object property, followed by an optional suffix.

The optional suffix is one or more upper-case characters and is used as a qualifier for the service:

- W Indicates an unconditional wait version of the service. For example, the `KS_AllocBlkW` service is the unconditional wait version of the `KS_AllocBlk` service.
- T Indicates a tick-limited wait version of the service. For example, the `KS_AllocBlkT` service is the tick-limited wait version of the `KS_AllocBlk` service.
- M Indicates a service to be performed on multiple semaphore objects. For example, `KS_SignalSemaM` signals multiple semaphores.

## Arguments to Kernel Services

The **RTXC** Kernel service descriptions show the function prototypes with generalized **RTXC** arguments. Similarly, the descriptions show the values returned from kernel service functions symbolically as described in Table 1-2 on page 6.

## Kernel Service Return Codes

Many of the **RTXC** Kernel services return a value that conveys information about the service's operation. This value is the *kernel service return code* (KSRC) value. The *Outputs* section of each service description lists and describes the KSRC values for the service.

## Diagnostic Mode and Fatal Errors

The **RTXC** Kernel provides a diagnostic mode of operation to speed up the development process. When the application is generated in diagnostic mode, the **RTXC** Kernel performs numerous validity tests on the arguments being passed in kernel service calls. When an argument fails its validity test, the kernel passes a fatal error code to the system error function. The *Errors* section of each service

description lists and describes the fatal errors that may be generated by the service. For a complete list of the error codes and the services that generate those codes, see Appendix A, “Fatal Error Codes.”

**Table 1-2.** Kernel Service Return Value Types

Symbol	Description
TASK	Task handle
THREAD	Thread handle
PRIORITY	Priority of a task or a message
TSLICE	Number of TICKS in the time quantum for a time-sliced task
SEMA	Semaphore handle
SEMACOUNT	Number of signals that a semaphore has received
MBOX	Mailbox handle
MSGENV	Message envelope
QUEUE	Queue handle
PART	Memory partition handle
BLKSIZE	Size of a block of memory in a partition
MUTX	Mutex handle
EVNTSRC	Event Source handle
COUNTER	Counter handle
ALARM	Alarm handle
TICKS	Units of time maintained by the system time base
EXCPTN	Exception handle

**Table 1-2.** Kernel Service Return Value Types (*continued*)

Symbol	Description
KSRC	Kernel Service Return Code

## Kernel Service Classes

The **RTXC/ss** component kernel services are divided into the following basic classes and subclasses:

- ▶ Thread Management
- ▶ Exception Management
- ▶ Pipe Management
- ▶ Event Source Management
- ▶ Counter Management
- ▶ Alarm Management

The **RTXC/ms** component kernel services are divided into the following basic classes and subclasses:

- ▶ Task Management
- ▶ Intertask Communication and Synchronization
  - ▷ Semaphores
  - ▷ Queues
  - ▷ Mailboxes
  - ▷ Messages
- ▶ Memory Partition Management
- ▶ Mutex Management

The **RTXC** Kernel also includes a number of kernel services that are independent of the object classes and are available for use in either component. These services are called Special Services.

The remaining sections describe each class and subclass. Each section includes a table listing all of the services within that class or subclass. The table contains a brief description of each service and a

cross-reference to the detailed description of the service in the reference chapters of this book.

## RTXC/ss Component Services

The **RTXC/ss** component of the **RTXC** Kernel features a single stack model with a low-latency thread scheduler and a small footprint, making it ideally suited for applications requiring high frequency interrupt processing, such as in digital signal processing. The following sections describe the object classes supported in the **RTXC/ss** component and their related kernel services.

### Thread Management Services

The Thread Management services, listed in Table 1-3, allow for complete control of threads and their respective interactions, including scheduling threads and maintaining information about thread scheduling requests. For detailed descriptions, see Chapter 2, “Thread Services.”

**Table 1-3.** Thread Services Summary

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
XX_ClearThreadGateBits	Clear bits in a thread gate.	<b>1 2 3</b>	23
XX_DecrThreadGate	Decrement the thread gate.	<b>1 2 3</b>	26
XX_DefThreadArg	Define a new argument pointer for the thread.	<b>1 2 3</b>	28
XX_DefThreadEntry	Define or redefine a thread’s entry point.	<b>1 2 3</b>	30
XX_DefThreadEnvArg	Define the thread’s environment arguments.	<b>2 3</b>	32
KS_DefThreadName	Define the name of a previously opened dynamic thread.	<b>3</b>	34
XX_DefThreadProp	Define the thread’s properties.	<b>2 3</b>	36

**Table 1-3.** Thread Services Summary (*continued*)

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
TS_DisableThreadScheduler	Disable thread scheduling.	<b>2</b>	38
TS_EnableThreadScheduler	Enable thread scheduling.	<b>2</b>	39
TS_GetThreadArg	Get the argument pointer for a thread.	<b>2</b>	40
TS_GetThreadBaseLevel	Get a thread's base execution priority level.	<b>2</b>	42
KS_GetThreadClassProp	Get the Thread object class properties.	<b>3</b>	44
TS_GetThreadCurrentLevel	Get the Current Thread's execution priority level.	<b>2</b>	47
XX_GetThreadEnvArg	Get the pointer to the thread's environment arguments.	<b>2 3</b>	48
XX_GetThreadGate	Get the value of the thread's thread gate.	<b>2 3</b>	50
TS_GetThreadGateLoadPreset	Get the value of the Current Thread's thread gate and then load the thread gate with the value of the thread gate preset.	<b>2</b>	52
XX_GetThreadGatePreset	Read the content of the thread gate preset.	<b>2 3</b>	54
TS_GetThreadID	Read the Current Thread's ID.	<b>2</b>	55
KS_GetThreadName	Get the thread's name.	<b>3</b>	56
XX_GetThreadProp	Get the properties of the specified thread.	<b>2 3</b>	58
XX_IncrThreadGate	Increment a thread gate.	<b>1 2 3</b>	60
KS_LookupThread	Look up a thread by its name to get its handle.	<b>3</b>	62
TS_LowerThreadLevel	Lower the Current Thread's execution priority level.	<b>2</b>	64
XX_ORThreadGateBits	Set the bits in a thread gate using logical OR.	<b>1 2 3</b>	66

**Table 1-3.** Thread Services Summary (*continued*)













Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
XX_PresetThreadGate	Set the new thread gate value to the current thread gate preset value.	<b>2 3</b>	68
TS_RaiseThreadLevel	Raise the Current Thread's execution priority level.	<b>2</b>	70
XX_ScheduleThread	Schedule execution of a thread.	<b>1 2 3</b>	72
XX_ScheduleThreadArg	Schedule execution of a thread and define a new argument.	<b>1 2 3</b>	75
XX_SetThreadGate	Set new thread gate and thread gate preset values.	<b>2 3</b>	78
XX_SetThreadGatePreset	Set a new thread gate preset value.	<b>2 3</b>	80
INIT_ThreadClassProp	Initialize the Thread object class properties.	<b>3</b>	82
XX_UnscheduleThread	Unschedule execution of a thread.	<b>1 2</b>	84



## Exception Services

The Exception services, listed in Table 1-4, provide a method of performing certain operations to facilitate the design and use of exception handlers. For detailed descriptions, see Chapter 3, “Exception Services.”

**Table 1-4.** Exception Services Summary

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
KS_CloseException	End the use of a dynamic exception.		88
KS_DefExceptionName	Define the name of a previously opened exception.		90
XX_DefExceptionProp	Define the properties of an exception.	 	92
INIT_ExceptionClassProp	Initialize the Exception object class properties.		94
KS_GetExceptionClassProp	Get the Exception object class properties.		96
KS_GetExceptionName	Get the name of an exception.		98
XX_GetExceptionProp	Get the properties of an exception.	 	100
KS_LookupException	Look up an exception’s name to get its handle.		102
KS_OpenException	Allocate and name a dynamic exception.		104
KS_UseException	Look up a dynamic exception by name and mark it for use.		107















## Pipe Services

The Pipe services, listed in Table 1-5, move data between a single producer and a single consumer and maintain information about pipe states. For detailed descriptions, see Chapter 4, “Pipe Services.”

**Table 1-5.** Pipe Services Summary

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
KS_ClosePipe	End the use of a dynamic pipe.	<b>3</b>	110
XX_DefPipeAction	Define action to perform following XX_PutFullPipeBuf or XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf services.	<b>2 3</b>	112
XX_DefPipeProp	Define the properties of a pipe.	<b>2 3</b>	115
KS_DefPipeName	Define the name of a previously opened dynamic pipe.	<b>3</b>	118
XX_GetEmptyPipeBuf	Get an empty buffer from a specified pipe.	<b>1 2 3</b>	120
XX_GetFullPipeBuf	Get a full buffer from a specified pipe.	<b>1 2 3</b>	122
XX_GetPipeBufSize	Get the maximum usable size of buffers in the specified pipe.	<b>1 2 3</b>	124
KS_GetPipeClassProp	Get the Pipe class properties.	<b>3</b>	126
KS_GetPipeName	Get the pipe’s name.	<b>3</b>	128
XX_GetPipeProp	Get the pipe’s properties.	<b>2 3</b>	130
XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf	Put a full buffer at the front of a pipe and then get an empty buffer from the same pipe.	<b>1 2 3</b>	132
XX_JamFullPipeBuf	Put a full buffer at the front of a pipe.	<b>1 2 3</b>	136
KS_LookupPipe	Look up a pipe by name to get its handle.	<b>3</b>	138
KS_OpenPipe	Allocate and name a dynamic pipe.	<b>3</b>	140

**Table 1-5.** Pipe Services Summary (*continued*)

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
INIT_PipeClassProp	Initialize the Pipe object class properties.		142
XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf	Put an empty buffer into a pipe and then get a full buffer from the same pipe.	  	144
XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf	Return an empty buffer to a pipe.	  	147
XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf	Put a full buffer into a pipe and then get an empty buffer from the same pipe.	  	149
XX_PutFullPipeBuf	Put a full buffer into a pipe.	  	152
KS_UsePipe	Look up a dynamic pipe by name and mark it for use.		154






## Event Source Management Services

The Event Source Management directives, listed in Table 1-6, when used with the Counter services listed in Table 1-7 on page 16, provide a way of maintaining accumulators of the number of events occurring on various event sources in the system. For detailed descriptions, see Chapter 5, “Event Source Services.”

**Table 1-6.** Event Source Services Summary

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
XX_ClearEventSourceAttr	Clear one or more event source attributes.	<b>2 3</b>	158
KS_CloseEventSource	End the use of a dynamic event source.	<b>3</b>	160
KS_DefEventSourceName	Define the name of a previously opened event source.	<b>3</b>	162
XX_DefEventSourceProp	Define the event source’s properties.	<b>2 3</b>	164
INIT_EventSourceClassProp	Initialize the Event Source object class properties.	<b>3</b>	167
XX_GetEventSourceAcc	Get the event sources’s accumulator.	<b>1 2 3</b>	169
KS_GetEventSourceClassProp	Get the Event Source object class properties.	<b>3</b>	171
KS_GetEventSourceName	Get the event source’s name.	<b>3</b>	173
XX_GetEventSourceProp	Get the event source’s properties.	<b>2 3</b>	175
KS_LookupEventSource	Look up an event source by its name to get its handle.	<b>3</b>	177
KS_OpenEventSource	Allocate and name a dynamic event source.	<b>3</b>	179
XX_ProcessEventSourceTick	Process a tick on an event source.	<b>1 2 3</b>	181

**Table 1-6.** Event Source Services Summary (*continued*)

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
XX_SetEventSourceAcc	Set the event source's accumulator to a specified value.	 	183
XX_SetEventSourceAttr	Set one or more event source attributes.	 	185
KS_UseEventSource	Look up a dynamic event source by name and mark it for use.		187






## Counter Management Services

The Counter Management directives, listed in Table 1-7, when used with the Event Source services listed in Table 1-6 on page 14, provide a way of maintaining and accumulating tick counts based on the number of events occurring on various event sources in the system so that tasks and threads may perform operations with respect to those counters. For detailed descriptions, see Chapter 6, “Counter Services.”

**Table 1-7.** Counter Services Summary

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
XX_ClearCounterAttr	Clear one or more attributes for a counter.	<b>2</b> <b>3</b>	190
KS_CloseCounter	End the use of a dynamic counter.	<b>3</b>	192
INIT_CounterClassProp	Initialize the Counter object class properties.	<b>3</b>	194
KS_DefCounterName	Define the name of a previously opened dynamic counter.	<b>3</b>	196
XX_DefCounterProp	Define the counter’s properties.	<b>2</b> <b>3</b>	198
XX_GetCounterAcc	Get the counter’s tick accumulator.	<b>1</b> <b>2</b> <b>3</b>	202
KS_GetCounterClassProp	Get the Counter object class properties.	<b>3</b>	204
KS_GetCounterName	Get the counter’s name.	<b>3</b>	206
XX_GetCounterProp	Get the counter’s properties.	<b>2</b> <b>3</b>	208
XX_GetElapsedCounterTicks	Compute the number of counter ticks that have elapsed between two events.	<b>2</b> <b>3</b>	210
KS_LookupCounter	Look up a counter by name to get its handle.	<b>3</b>	214
KS_OpenCounter	Allocate and name a dynamic counter.	<b>3</b>	216






















**Table 1-7.** Counter Services Summary (*continued*)

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
XX_SetCounterAcc	Set the accumulator of a counter to a specified value.	 	218
XX_SetCounterAttr	Set one or more attributes for a counter.	 	220
KS_UseCounter	Look up a dynamic counter by name and mark it for use.		222

## Alarm Management Services

The alarm-based directives, listed in Table 1-8, provide for the synchronization of tasks with events. They provide a generalized method of handling events relative to ticks that accumulate on an associated counter, allowing for time-based alarms as well as alarms based on other kinds of real-world events. For detailed descriptions, see Chapter 7, “Alarm Services.”

**Table 1-8.** Alarm Services Summary

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
XX_AbortAlarm	Abort an active alarm.	 	226
INIT_AlarmClassProp	Initialize the Alarm object class properties.		228
XX_ArmAlarm	Arm and start an alarm.	 	230
XX_CancelAlarm	Make an active alarm inactive.	 	232
KS_CloseAlarm	End the use of a dynamic alarm.		234
XX_DefAlarmAction	End the use of a dynamic alarm.	 	236
XX_DefAlarmActionArm	Define the action to perform when an alarm expires and then arm and start the alarm.	 	238
KS_DefAlarmName	Define the name of a previously opened alarm.		240
XX_DefAlarmProp	Define the properties of a alarm.	 	242
KS_DefAlarmSema	Associate a semaphore with a alarm event.		244
KS_GetAlarmClassProp	Get the Alarm object class properties.		246
KS_GetAlarmName	Get the name of a alarm.		248
XX_GetAlarmProp	Get the properties of a alarm.	 	250
KS_GetAlarmSema	Get the handle of the semaphore associated with a alarm event.		252














**Table 1-8.** Alarm Services Summary (*continued*)

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
XX_GetAlarmTicks	Get the number of counter ticks remaining until the expiration of an active alarm.	<b>2</b> <b>3</b>	254
KS_LookupAlarm	Look up a alarm's name to get its handle.	<b>3</b>	256
KS_OpenAlarm	Allocate and name a dynamic alarm.	<b>3</b>	258
XX_RearmAlarm	Rearm and restart an active alarm.	<b>2</b> <b>3</b>	260
KS_TestAlarm	Get the time, in ticks, remaining on an active alarm.	<b>3</b>	262
KS_TestAlarmT	Wait a specified number of ticks for an alarm to expire.	<b>3</b>	265
KS_TestAlarmW	Wait for a alarm to expire.	<b>3</b>	268
KS_UseAlarm	Look up a dynamic alarm by name and mark it for use.	<b>3</b>	270

## Special Services

The Special services, listed in Table 1-9, perform special functions not based on the object classes. For detailed descriptions, see Chapter 8, “Special Services.”

**Table 1-9.** Special Services Summary

Service	Description	Zones	Ref.
XX_AllocSysRAM	Allocate a block of system RAM.	 	274
XX_DefFatalErrorHandler	Establish the system error function.	 	276
XX_GetFatalErrorHandler	Get the system error function.	 	278
XX_GetFreeSysRAMSize	Get the size of free system RAM.	 	279
KS_GetSysProp	Get the system properties.		280
KS_GetVersion	Get the version number of the <b>RTXC</b> Kernel.		282
INIT_SysProp	Initialize the RTXC system properties.		284

## CHAPTER 2 Thread Services

---

### In This Chapter

We describe the Thread kernel services in detail. The Thread kernel services schedule threads and maintain information about thread states.

XX_ClearThreadGateBits.....	23
XX_DecrThreadGate.....	26
XX_DefThreadArg.....	28
XX_DefThreadEntry.....	30
XX_DefThreadEnvArg .....	32
KS_DefThreadName .....	34
XX_DefThreadProp.....	36
TS_DisableThreadScheduler.....	38
TS_EnableThreadScheduler .....	39
TS_GetThreadArg.....	40
TS_GetThreadBaseLevel .....	42
KS_GetThreadClassProp.....	44
TS_GetThreadCurrentLevel.....	47
XX_GetThreadEnvArg .....	48
XX_GetThreadGate .....	50
TS_GetThreadGateLoadPreset .....	52
XX_GetThreadGatePreset .....	54
TS_GetThreadID.....	55
KS_GetThreadName .....	56
XX_GetThreadProp .....	58
XX_IncrThreadGate.....	60

---

KS_LookupThread.....	62
TS_LowerThreadLevel .....	64
XX_ORThreadGateBits .....	66
XX_PresetThreadGate .....	68
TS_RaiseThreadLevel.....	70
XX_ScheduleThread.....	72
XX_ScheduleThreadArg.....	75
XX_SetThreadGate.....	78
XX_SetThreadGatePreset .....	80
INIT_ThreadClassProp .....	82
XX_UnscheduleThread .....	84

# XX\_ClearThreadGateBits

Clear bits in a thread gate.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_ClearThreadGateBits
- 2** TS\_ClearThreadGateBits
- 3** KS\_ClearThreadGateBits

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_ClearThreadGateBits (THREAD thread,  
                             GATEKEY gatekey)
```

## Inputs

- thread*      The handle of the thread containing the thread gate whose bits are to be cleared. The thread handle can be that of the Current Thread or it can be zero (0), representing the Current Thread.
- gatekey*     A mask value containing the bits to clear in *thread*'s thread gate.

## Description

The `XX_ClearThreadGateBits` kernel service clears bits in the thread gate of the specified *thread* according to the bits in *gatekey*. If the content of the thread gate is zero (0) before the service call, there is no change to the thread gate and control returns to the Current Thread without scheduling *thread*. If the resulting content of the thread gate is zero (0), the service schedules *thread*. At the same time the service schedules *thread*, it also loads the value of *thread*'s thread gate preset into the thread gate.

If an interrupt service routine (ISR) calls this service and the result requires scheduling *thread*, execution of *thread* cannot occur until the current ISR and all other ISRs are completed.

A preemption of the Current Thread may occur if *thread* is of a higher priority level than the Current Thread. In such a case, execution of *thread* is immediate. If *thread* is of the same or a lower priority level than that of the Current Thread, its execution does not occur until the termination of the Current Thread or at an even later time depending on the scheduling protocol in use for the given priority level.

A gatekey value of zero (0) causes no change to *thread's* thread gate value and results in a normal return.

## Output

This service returns a KSRV value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service was successful.
- ▶ RC\_GATE\_ALREADY\_ZERO if the gate contained a value of zero (0) before clearing.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-1, the Current Thread sets the gate for the thread specified in THREADA to 0xC00 and then clears the gate bits with two separate service calls. THREADA is scheduled only when both bits have been cleared.

### Example 2-1. Clear Thread Gate Bits

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

/* set THREADA's gate */
TS_SetThreadGate (THREADA, (GATEKEY)0xC00);

... perform some operations.

/* clear single bit in Thread's Gate */
TS_ClearThreadGateBits (THREADA, (GATEKEY)0x800);

... perform some operations.

/* clear single bit to schedule THREADA */
TS_ClearThreadGateBits (THREADA, (GATEKEY)0x400);

... THREADA was scheduled, continue
```

---

## See Also

XX\_ORThreadGateBits, page 66

# XX\_DecrThreadGate

Decrement the thread gate.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_DecrThreadGate
- 2** TS\_DecrThreadGate
- 3** KS\_DecrThreadGate

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_DecrThreadGate (THREAD thread)
```

## Input

*thread*      The handle of the thread containing the thread gate to decrement. The thread handle can be that of the Current Thread or it can be zero (0), representing the Current Thread.

## Description

The XX\_DecrThreadGate kernel service decrements by one the thread gate of the specified *thread*. If the resulting content of the thread gate is zero (0), the service schedules *thread*.

If an ISR calls this service and the result requires scheduling the thread, execution of the thread cannot occur until the current ISR and all other ISRs are completed.

A preemption of the Current Thread may occur if the *thread* whose gate becomes zero (0) after being decremented is of a higher priority level than the Current Thread. In such a case, execution of *thread* is immediate. If *thread* is of the same or a lower priority level than that of the Current Thread, its execution does not occur until the termination of the Current Thread or at an even later time depending on the scheduling protocol in use for the given priority level.

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service was successful.
- ▶ RC\_GATE\_UNDERFLOW if gate contained a value less than or equal to zero (0) before decrement.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.



- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-2, the Current Thread sets the gate of the thread specified in THREADA to 2, and then decrements the gate value to zero with two separate Kernel service calls. THREADA is scheduled only when the gate value is zero.

### Example 2-2. Decrement Thread Gate

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

/* set THREADA's gate */
TS_SetThreadGate (THREADA, (GATEKEY)2);

/* decrement Thread's Gate */
TS_DecrThreadGate (THREADA);

... perform some operations.

/* decrement Thread's Gate, which will schedule Thread */
TS_DecrThreadGate (THREADA);

... THREADA was scheduled, continue
```

---

## See Also

XX\_IncrThreadGate, page 60

# XX\_DefThreadArg

Define a new argument pointer for the thread.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_DefThreadArg
- 2** TS\_DefThreadArg
- 3** KS\_DefThreadArg

## Synopsis

```
void XX_DefThreadArg (THREAD thread, void *parg)
```

## Inputs

- thread*      The handle of the thread receiving the new argument definition.
- parg*          A pointer to the argument for the specified *thread*.

## Description

The XX\_DefThreadArg kernel service establishes a pointer, *parg*, to an argument containing one or more parameters to be used by the specified *thread*. Each time *thread* executes, it automatically receives the pointer to its arguments. The *parg* pointer may point to a scalar datum or a structure. The **RTXC** Kernel places no restrictions on the size or content of the argument structure.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-3 on page 29, the Current Thread defines the argument for the thread specified in THREADA and then schedules THREADA.

**Example 2-3.** Define Thread Argument Pointer

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

char buffer[80];              /* argument for THREADA */

/* define arguments for THREADA */
TS_DefThreadArg (THREADA, (void *)&buffer);

/* schedule THREADA */
TS_ScheduleThead (THREADA);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**[XX\\_ScheduleThreadArg](#), page 75

# XX\_DefThreadEntry

Define or redefine a thread's entry point.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_DefThreadEntry
- 2** TS\_DefThreadEntry
- 3** KS\_DefThreadEntry

## Synopsis

```
void XX_DefThreadEntry (THREAD thread,  
                        void (*pentry) (void *, void *))
```

## Inputs

- thread*      The handle of the thread being defined.
- pentry*      Address of thread's new entry point.

## Description

The XX\_DefThreadEntry kernel service establishes a pointer, *pentry*, to the entry point of the specified *thread*. The next time *thread* gets control of the CPU, it begins execution at the address defined by *pentry*.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ FE\_NULL\_THREADENTRY if the specified Thread entry address is null.

## Example

In Example 2-4 on page 31, the Current Thread changes the entry point of the thread specified in THREADA to newentry, and then schedules THREADA.

**Example 2-4.** Define Thread Entry Point

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

extern void newentry (void *, void *);

/* define new entry point for THREADA */
TS_DefThreadEntry (THREADA, newentry);

/* schedule THREADA with its new entry */
TS_ScheduleThread (THREADA);

... continue
```

---

# XX\_DefThreadEnvArg

Define the thread's environment arguments.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_DefThreadEnvArg
- 3** KS\_DefThreadEnvArg

## Synopsis

```
void XX_DefThreadEnvArg (THREAD thread, void *parg)
```

## Inputs

- thread*      The handle of the thread being defined.
- parg*          A pointer to a Thread environment arguments structure.

## Description

The XX\_DefThreadEnvArg kernel service establishes a pointer, *parg*, to a structure containing parameters that define the environment of the specified *thread*. Because threads inherently have no context saved or restored by **RTXC/ss** or **RTXC/ms** between execution cycles, the environment arguments structure serves as a place to save those parameters that are specific to a thread's operation. The **RTXC** Kernel places no restrictions on the size or content of the environment arguments structure.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Environment Arguments* attribute of the Thread class during system generation.

---

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-5 on page 33, the Current Thread defines the environment arguments for the thread specified in THREADA and then schedules THREADA.

**Example 2-5.** Define Thread Environment Arguments Pointer

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

struct {
    int count;
    char buffer[80];
} envargA;                    /* environment argument for THREADA */

/* define environment arguments for THREADA */
TS_DefThreadEnvArg (THREADA, (void *)&envargA);

/* schedule THREADA */
TS_ScheduleThead (THREADA);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_GetThreadClassProp, page 44  
XX\_GetThreadEnvArg, page 48

## KS\_DefThreadName

Define the name of a previously opened dynamic thread.

### Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_DefThreadName (THREAD thread,  
                       const char *pname)
```

### Inputs

*thread*      The handle of the thread being defined.

*pname*       A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

### Description

The KS\_DefThreadName kernel service names or renames the specified dynamic *thread*. The service uses the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* for the new name. The kernel only stores *pname* internally, which means that the same array cannot be used to build multiple dynamic thread names. Static threads cannot be named or renamed under program control.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Thread class during system generation.

This service does not check for duplicate thread names.

---

### Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ RC\_STATIC\_OBJECT if the thread being named is static.
- ▶ RC\_OBJECT\_NOT\_FOUND if the *Dynamics* attribute of the Thread class is not enabled.
- ▶ RC\_OBJECT\_NOT\_INUSE if the dynamic thread being named is still in the free pool of dynamic threads.

### Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.



**Example**

Example 2-6 assigns the name `NewThread` to the thread specified in `dynthread` variable so other users may reference it by name.

**Example 2-6.** Define Dynamic Thread Name

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

THREAD dynthread;

if (KS_DefThreadName (dynthread, "NewTask") != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... Probably is a static thread. Deal with it here.
}

... else the naming operation was successful. Continue
```

---

**See Also**

`KS_GetThreadName`, page 56

# XX\_DefThreadProp

Define the thread's properties.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_DefThreadProp
- 3** KS\_DefThreadProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_DefThreadProp (THREAD thread,  
                      THREADPROP *pthreadprop)
```

## Inputs

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <i>thread</i>      | The handle of the thread being defined.     |
| <i>pthreadprop</i> | A pointer to a Thread properties structure. |

## Description

The XX\_DefThreadProp kernel service defines the properties of the specified *thread* by using the values contained in the THREADPROP structure pointed to by *pthreadprop*. You may use this service on static or dynamically allocated threads. It is typically used to define a static thread during system startup.

Example 2-7 shows the organization of the THREADPROP structure.

### Example 2-7. Thread Properties Structure

---

```
typedef struct _threadprop  
{  
    KATTR attributes;           /* thread attributes */  
    TLEVEL level;              /* thread base level */  
    TORDER order;              /* thread order      */  
    void (*threaddy)(void *, void *);  
                                /* current entry point address */  
} THREADPROP;
```

---

The entry point of the thread is specified in *threaddy* in the THREADPROP structure. At the initial definition of *thread*'s properties, *threaddy* should contain *thread*'s initial entry point. Afterwards, the content of *threaddy* is subject to change through the use of this kernel service as well as the more direct XX\_DefThreadEntry kernel service.



**Warning:** The values for *level* and *order* are provided for information only and must never be changed. Altering these values after their initial definition may cause errors or undesirable thread behavior.

---

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Error

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_NULL\_THREADENTRY if the specified Thread entry address is null.

## Example

During system initialization, the startup routine must create and initialize the Thread object class and define the properties of all the static Threads before the start of Thread scheduling, as illustrated in Example 2-8.

### Example 2-8. Define Thread Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

extern const KCLASSPROP threadclassprop;
extern const THREADPROP threadprop[];

int objnum;
KSRC ksrc;

/* initialize the THREAD class/object data */
if ((ksrc = INIT_ThreadClassProp (&threadclassprop))
    != RC_GOOD)
    return ksrc;

for (objnum = 1; objnum <= threadclassprop.n_statics; objnum++)
{
    TS_DefThreadProp (objnum, &threadprop[objnum]);
}
```

---

## See Also

XX\_GetThreadProp, page 58

# TS\_DisableThreadScheduler

Disable thread scheduling.

## Synopsis

```
void TS_DisableThreadScheduler (void)
```

## Inputs

This service has no inputs.

## Description

The `TS_DisableThreadScheduler` kernel service disables further scheduling of threads by the **RTXC/ss** Scheduler until such time as the Current Thread re-enables thread scheduling.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Example

In Example 2-9, the Current Thread disables Thread scheduling during some critical code section, then re-enables Thread scheduling when the critical section is complete.

### Example 2-9. Disable Thread Scheduling

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

/* disable Thread scheduling */
TS_DisableThreadScheduler ();

... execute critical code

/* enable Thread scheduling */
TS_EnableThreadScheduler ();

... continue
```

---

## See Also

`TS_EnableThreadScheduler`, page 39

# TS\_EnableThreadScheduler

Enable thread scheduling.

## Synopsis

```
void TS_EnableThreadScheduler (void)
```

## Inputs

This service has no inputs.

## Description

The `TS_EnableThreadScheduler` kernel service enables scheduling of threads by the **RTXC/ss** Scheduler after being previously disabled. The service returns the priority level of the Scheduler to the Current Thread's base execution level.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Example

In Example 2-10, after performing some critical function with Thread scheduling disabled, the Current Thread re-enables Thread scheduling.

### Example 2-10. Enable Thread Scheduling

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

/* disable Thread scheduling */
TS_DisableThreadScheduler ();

... execute critical code

/* enable Thread scheduling */
TS_EnableThreadScheduler ();

... continue
```

---

## See Also

`TS_DisableThreadScheduler`, page 38

# TS\_GetThreadArg

Get the argument pointer for a thread.

## Synopsis

```
void * TS_GetThreadArg(THREAD thread)
```

## Inputs

*thread*      The handle of the thread containing the argument definition.

## Description

The `TS_GetThreadArg` kernel service locates and returns the current value of the thread argument for the specified *thread*. This service would not typically be used by the Current Thread because each time a thread executes, it automatically receives the pointer to its argument. Therefore, the specified *thread* typically different than the current thread.

## Output

This service returns the value of the thread argument. The returned pointer may be a scalar datum or a structure. If it is a structure, the **RTXC** Kernel places no restrictions on the size or content of the argument structure.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD` if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD` if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-11 on page 41, the Current Thread retrieves the argument for the thread specified in `THREADA`, verifies it as being non-zero, and if so, schedules `THREADA`. If the thread argument is zero, it takes a different path.

**Example 2-11.** Get Thread Argument

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"      /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kproject.h"     /* */
#include "kthread.h"      /* THREADA */

/* get argument for THREADA */
if (TS_GetThreadArg(THREADA) <> (void *)0);
{
    /* schedule THREADA */
    TS_ScheduleThead(THREADA);

    ... continue
}
else
{
    do something else...
}
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_DefThreadArg, page 28

## TS\_GetThreadBaseLevel

Get a thread's base execution priority level.

### Synopsis

```
TLEVEL TS_GetThreadBaseLevel (THREAD thread)
```

### Input

*thread*      The handle of the thread whose base execution level is being read. The value of *thread* may be zero (0), representing the Current Thread.

### Description

The TS\_GetThreadBaseLevel kernel service reads the base execution priority level of the specified *thread* and returns it to the caller.

### Output

This service returns a TLEVEL type value containing *thread*'s base execution priority level.

### Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

### Example

Example 2-12 on page 43, the Current Thread reads the base execution level of the thread specified in THREADA and raises the Current Thread's level if it is less than THREADA's base execution level. Remember that higher priority levels are numerically smaller than lower priority levels.



**Example 2-12.** Read Thread Base Execution Priority Level

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

TLEVEL tlevel;

/* get THREADA's base execution level */
tlevel = TS_GetThreadBaseLevel (THREADA);

/* check current priority level against THREADA's */
if (TS_GetThreadCurrentLevel () > tlevel)
{
    /* THREADA priority is higher than Current Thread, */
    /* so raise Current Thread's level.                */
    TS_RaiseThreadLevel (tlevel);
}

... continue
```

---

**See Also**

TS\_GetThreadCurrentLevel, page 47

## KS\_GetThreadClassProp

Get the Thread object class properties.

### Synopsis

```
const KCLASSPROP * KS_GetThreadClassProp (int *pint)
```

### Input

*pint*            A pointer to an integer variable in which to store the current number of unused dynamic threads.

### Description

The KS\_GetThreadClassProp kernel service obtains a pointer to the KCLASSPROP structure that was used during system initialization by the INIT\_ThreadClassProp service to initialize the Thread object class properties.

If the *pint* pointer contains a non-zero address, the current number of unused dynamic threads is stored in the indicated address. If *pint* contains a null pointer ((int \*)0), the service ignores the parameter. If the Thread object class properties do not include the *Dynamics* attribute, the service stores a value of zero (0) at the address contained in *pint*.

Example 2-13 shows the organization of the KCLASSPROP structure.

#### Example 2-13. Object Class Properties Structure

---

```
typedef struct
{
    KATTR attributes;
    KOBJECT n_statics;           /* number of static objects */
    KOBJECT n_dynamics;         /* number of dynamic objects */
    short objsize;              /* used for calculating offsets */
    short totalsize;           /* used to alloc object array RAM */
    ksize_t namelen;           /* length of the name string */
    const char *pstaticnames;
} KCLASSPROP;
```

---

The *attributes* element of the Thread property structure supports the class property attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 2-1 on page 45.

**Table 2-1.** Thread Class Attributes and Masks

Attribute	Mask
Static Names	ATTR_STATIC_NAMES
Dynamics	ATTR_DYNAMICS
Thread Gates	ATTR_THREAD_GATES
Environment Arguments	ATTR_THREAD_ENV
Thread Arguments	ATTR_THREAD_ARG

## Output

If successful, this service returns a pointer to a `KCLASSPROP` structure.

If the Thread class is not initialized, the service returns a null pointer (`((KCLASSPROP *)0)`).

If  *pint*  is not null (`((int *)0)`), the service returns the number of available dynamic threads in the variable pointed to by  *pint* .

## Example

In Example 2-14 on page 46, the Current Thread needs access to the information contained in the `KCLASSPROP` structure for the Thread object class.

**Example 2-14.** Read Thread Object Class Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

KCLASSPROP *pthreadclassprop;
int free_dyn;

/* Get the thread kernel object class properties */
if ((pthreadclassprop = KS_GetThreadClassProp (&free_dyn))
    == (KCLASSPROP *)0)
{
    putline ("Thread Class not initialized");
}
else
{
    ...thread object class properties are available for use
    "free_dyn" contains the number of available dynamic threads
}
```

---

**See Also**                      [INIT\\_ThreadClassProp](#), page 82

# TS\_GetThreadCurrentLevel

Get the Current Thread's execution priority level.

## Synopsis

TLEVEL TS\_GetThreadCurrentLevel (void)

## Inputs

This service has no inputs.

## Description

The TS\_GetThreadCurrentLevel kernel service reads the Current Thread's execution priority level.

## Output

This service returns a TLEVEL type value containing the Current Thread's execution priority level.

## Example

Example 2-15, the Current Thread compares its current level with the base execution level of the thread specified in THREADA and, if its level is less than THREADA, raises its level to that of THREADA. Remember that higher priority levels are numerically smaller than lower priority levels.

### Example 2-15. Read Thread Execution Priority Level

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

TLEVEL tlevel;

/* get THREADA's base execution level */
tlevel = TS_GetThreadBaseLevel (THREADA);

/* see if current priority level is lower than THREADA's */
if ( TS_GetThreadCurrentLevel () > tlevel )
{
    /* Yes, it is, so raise current Thread's level. */
    TS_RaiseThreadLevel (tlevel);
}

... continue
```

---

## See Also

TS\_GetThreadBaseLevel, page 42

# XX\_GetThreadEnvArg

Get the pointer to the thread's environment arguments.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetThreadEnvArg
- 3** KS\_GetThreadEnvArg

## Synopsis

```
void * XX_GetThreadEnvArg (THREAD thread)
```

## Input

*thread*      The handle of the thread whose environment arguments pointer is being read.



---

**Note:** The Current Thread already has the pointer to its environment arguments (if defined), having received it as one of two parameters passed to it by the **RTXC/ss** Scheduler. It would be unnecessary for the Current Thread to use this service when referring to itself. Instead, the value of *thread* would more likely be the handle of a thread other than that of the Current Thread.

---

## Description

The `XX_GetThreadEnvArg` kernel service reads the pointer to the environment arguments structure for the specified *thread* and returns that pointer to the caller.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Environment Arguments* attribute of the Thread class during system generation.

---

## Output

This service returns a pointer to *thread*'s environment structure as follows:

- ▶ a valid non-null pointer if the service was successful
- ▶ a null (0) pointer if the thread's environment arguments have not been defined.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

Example 2-16, the Current Thread reads the environment arguments for the thread specified in THREADA and performs some operation if *count* is non-zero.

### Example 2-16. Read Thread Environment Arguments Pointer

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

typedef struct {
    int count;
    char buffer[80];
} envargA;                    /* environment argument for THREADA */

envargA *envarg;

/* get THREADA's environment arguments */
envarg = (envargA *)TS_GetThreadEnvArg (THREADA);

/* test the count */
if (envarg->count != 0)
{
    ... perform some operation
}

... continue
```

---

## See Also

XX\_DefThreadEnvArg, page 32

# XX\_GetThreadGate

Get the value of the thread's thread gate.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetThreadGate
- 3** KS\_GetThreadGate

## Synopsis

```
GATEKEY XX_GetThreadGate (THREAD thread)
```

## Input

*thread*      The handle of the thread containing the thread gate to read. The thread handle can be that of the Current Thread, which is assumed if the thread handle is zero (0).

## Description

The `XX_GetThreadGate` kernel service reads the thread gate content of the specified *thread* and returns it to the caller. No change occurs to the value of the thread gate.

## Output

This service returns the thread gate's content as a `GATEKEY` type value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD` if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD` if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-17 on page 51, the Current Thread reads its own thread gate value and performs some operation `gatevalue` times.



**Example 2-17.** Read Thread Gate

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

GATEKEY gatevalue;
int i;

gatevalue = TS_GetThreadGate (SELFTHREAD);

for ( i = 1; i <= gatevalue; i++ )
{
    ... perform some operation
}

... continue
```

---

**See Also**[XX\\_SetThreadGate](#), page 78

## TS\_GetThreadGateLoadPreset

Get the value of the Current Thread's thread gate and then load the thread gate with the value of the thread gate preset.

### Synopsis

```
GATEKEY TS_GetThreadGateLoadPreset (void)
```

### Inputs

This service has no inputs.

### Description

The `TS_GetThreadGateLoadPreset` kernel service reads the value of the Current Thread's thread gate and returns it to the Current Thread. At the same time, the service also gets the value of the Current Thread's thread gate preset and moves it into the associated thread gate.

If the Current Thread has been rescheduled at the time of its request for this service, the service removes the scheduling request, allowing the thread to continue to operate if it chooses.

### Output

This service returns the value of the Current Thread's thread gate.

### Example

In Example 2-18 on page 53, the Current Thread reads its thread gate value and simultaneously presets its thread gate in preparation for the next execution cycle. It uses the thread gate value it reads as the counter for the number of times to execute an internal loop before returning control of the CPU.

**Example 2-18. Read and Preset Thread Gate**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

void threada (void *env, void *arg)
{
    GATEKEY loopct;
    int i;

    /* preset thread gate (preset = 2) */
    loopct = TS_GetThreadGateLoadPreset ();

    for (i=0; i<=loopct; i++)
    {
        ...do some thing
    }
    return
}
```

---

# XX\_GetThreadGatePreset

Read the content of the thread gate preset.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetThreadGatePreset
- 3** KS\_GetThreadGatePreset

## Synopsis

GATEKEY XX\_GetThreadGatePreset (THREAD thread)

## Inputs

*thread*      The handle of the thread containing the thread gate to read.  
The thread handle can be that of the Current Thread, which is assumed if the thread handle is zero (0).

## Description

The XX\_GetThreadGatePreset kernel service reads the content of the thread gate preset of the specified *thread* and returns the content to the caller. No change occurs to the value of the thread gate or the thread gate preset.

## Output

This service returns the content of the thread gate preset as a GATEKEY type value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-19, the Current Thread reads its own thread gate preset value.

### Example 2-19. Read Thread Gate Preset

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"           /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */  
  
GATEKEY presetvalue;  
  
presetvalue = TS_GetThreadGatePreset (SELFTHREAD);  
  
... continue
```

---

# TS\_GetThreadID

Read the Current Thread's ID.

## Synopsis

THREAD TS\_GetThreadID (void)

## Inputs

This service has no inputs.

## Description

The TS\_GetThreadID kernel service reads the Current Thread's ID and returns it to the Current Thread.

## Output

This service returns the Current Thread's ID as a THREAD type value.

## Example

Example 2-20, the Current Thread reads its own thread ID.

### Example 2-20. Read Current Thread ID

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */  
  
THREAD thread;  
  
thread = TS_GetThreadID ();  
  
... continue
```

---

# KS\_GetThreadName

Get the thread's name.

## Synopsis

```
char * KS_GetThreadName (THREAD thread)
```

## Input

*thread*      The handle of the thread being queried.

## Description

The KS\_GetThreadName kernel service obtains a pointer to the null-terminated string containing the name of the specified *thread*. The thread may be static or dynamic.



---

**Note:** To use this service on static threads, you must enable the *Static Names* attribute of the Thread class during system generation.

---

## Output

If *thread* has a name, this service returns a pointer to its null-terminated name string.

If *thread* has no name, the service returns a null pointer ((char \*)0).

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:  
FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.

## Example

In Example 2-21 on page 57, the Current Task reports the name of the dynamic thread specified in `dynthread`.

**Example 2-21. Read Thread Name**

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

static char buf[128];
THREAD dynthread;
char *pname;

if ((pname = KS_GetThreadName (dynthread)) == (char *)0)
    sprintf (buf, "Thread %d has no name", dynthread);
else
    sprintf (buf, "Thread %d name is %s", dynthread, pname);

putline (buf);
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_DefThreadName, page 34

# XX\_GetThreadProp

Get the properties of the specified thread.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetThreadProp
- 3** KS\_GetThreadProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_GetThreadProp (THREAD thread,  
                      THREADPROP *pthreadprop)
```

## Inputs

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <i>thread</i>      | The handle of the thread being queried. The thread handle can be that of the Current Thread, which is assumed if the thread handle is zero (0). |
| <i>pthreadprop</i> | A pointer to a Thread properties structure in which to store the thread's properties.   |

## Description

The `XX_GetThreadProp` kernel service obtains all of the property values of the specified *thread* in a single call. The *thread* input argument may specify a static or a dynamic thread. The service stores the property values in the `THREADPROP` structure pointed to by *pthreadprop* and returns to the caller.

The `THREADPROP` structure has the following organization:

---

```
typedef struct _threadprop  
{  
    KATTR attributes;           /* thread attributes */  
    TLEVEL level;              /* thread base level */  
    TORDER order;              /* thread order      */  
    void (*threentry)(void *, void *);  
                                /* current entry point address */  
} THREADPROP;
```

---

The entry point of the thread is specified by *threentry* in the `THREADPROP` structure. At the initialization of the thread, *threentry* should contain *thread's* initial entry point. The content of *threentry* is subject to change through the use of the `XX_DefThreadProp` kernel service as well as the more direct `XX_DefThreadEntry` kernel service.



## Output

This service returns *thread*'s properties in the property structure pointed to by *pthreadprop*.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-22, the Current Thread changes the entry point for the thread specified in `THREADA`. The Current Thread first obtains the current properties of `THREADA`, then modifies the entry point in the `THREADPROP` structure. It then uses the `XX_DefThreadProp` service to redefine the properties for `THREADA`. The same results can be obtain using the `XX_DefThreadEntry` service.

### Example 2-22. Read Thread Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

extern void newentry (void *, void *);

THREADPROP threadprop;

/* get current Thread Properties */
TS_GetThreadProp (THREADA, &threadprop);

/* modify just the entry element */
threadprop.threadentry = newentry;

/* define the new Thread properties */
TS_DefThreadProp (THREADA, &threadprop);

... continue
```

---

## See Also

`XX_DefThreadProp`, page 36

# XX\_IncrThreadGate

Increment a thread gate.

## Zones

1	IS_IncrThreadGate
2	TS_IncrThreadGate
3	KS_IncrThreadGate

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_IncrThreadGate (THREAD thread)
```

## Input

*thread*      The handle of the thread containing the thread gate to increment. The thread handle can be that of the Current Thread or it can be zero (0), representing the Current Thread.

## Description

The XX\_IncrThreadGate kernel service adds one (1) to the contents of the thread gate of the specified *thread*. Following the addition, the service schedules *thread*. The value of the thread gate remains as incremented until another request to increment the thread gate occurs or until *thread* executes and reads the thread gate and simultaneously resets it using the TS\_GetThreadGateLoadPreset kernel service.

Incrementing the thread gate does not cause a rollover of the thread gate should *thread* fail to run or to read and reset the content of the thread gate. The value of the thread gate contents is limited to the maximum unsigned integer value capable of being stored in the thread gate as a value of the GATEKEY type.

If an ISR calls this service, *thread* is scheduled for execution. However, execution of *thread* cannot occur until the current ISR and all other ISRs are completed.

A preemption of the Current Thread occurs if *thread* is of a higher priority level than the Current Thread. In such a case, execution of *thread* is immediate. If *thread* is of the same or lower priority level, its execution does not occur until the termination of the Current Thread or at an even later time depending on the order number of the thread and the scheduling protocol in use for the given priority level.

A task incrementing a thread gate is always preempted because *thread* is scheduled at Zone 2, which is of higher priority than the task operation at Zone 3.

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service was successful.
- ▶ RC\_GATE\_OVERFLOW if the gate content is clipped at its maximum unsigned value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-23, the Current Thread increments the thread gate of the thread specified in `THREADA`.

### Example 2-23. Increment Thread Gate

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

/* increment THREADA's Gate */
if (TS_IncrThreadGate (THREADA) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ...must have had a gate overflow. Something may be wrong.
}
else
{
    ...thread gate incremented, THREADA scheduled, continue
}
```

---

## See Also

XX\_DecrThreadGate, page 26  
XX\_GetThreadGate, page 50  
XX\_SetThreadGate, page 78

# KS\_LookupThread

Look up a thread by its name to get its handle.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_LookupThread (const char *pname,  
                      THREAD *pthread)
```

## Inputs

*pname*      A pointer to the null-terminated name string for the thread.

*pthread*     A pointer to a variable in which to store the matching thread's handle, if found.

## Description

The KS\_LookupThread kernel service obtains the handle of a static or dynamic thread whose name matches the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*. The lookup process terminates when it finds a match between the specified string and a static or dynamic thread name or when it finds no match. The service searches dynamic names, if any, first. If a match is found, the service stores the thread handle in the variable pointed to by *pthread*.



---

**Note:** To use this service on dynamic threads, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Thread class during system generation.

To use this service on static threads, you must enable the *Static Names* attribute of the Thread class during system generation.

This service has no effect on the registration of the specified thread by the Current Task.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of thread names in use.

---

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the search succeeds. The service stores the matching thread's handle in the variable pointed to by *pthread*.

- ▶ RC\_OBJECT\_NOT\_FOUND if the service finds no matching thread name.

## Example

In Example 2-24, the Current Task needs to use the DynThread2 dynamic thread. If the thread name is found, the example outputs the thread handle to the console in a brief message.

### Example 2-24. Look Up Thread by Name

---

```
#include <stdio.h>          /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"         /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

THREAD dynthread;
static char buf[128];

/* lookup the thread name to see if it exists */
if (KS_LookupThread ("DynThread2", &dynthread) != RC_GOOD)
{
    putline ("Thread DynThread2 name not found");
}
else /* thread exists */
{
    sprintf (buf, "DynThread2 is thread %d", dynthread);
    putline (buf);
}
```

---

## See Also

KS\_DefThreadName, page 34  
KS\_GetThreadName, page 56

# TS\_LowerThreadLevel

Lower the Current Thread's execution priority level.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC TS_LowerThreadLevel (TLEVEL newlevel)
```

## Input

*newlevel*    The new temporary execution priority level for the Current Thread.

## Description

The `TS_LowerThreadLevel` kernel service lowers the Current Thread's execution priority level to the value specified in *newlevel*. If *newlevel* is zero (0), the service returns the Current Thread to its base execution priority level. If *newlevel* specifies an execution priority level less than the Current Thread's base execution priority level, the thread's base execution priority level is substituted for the value of *newlevel* and the operation proceeds but with a notification of the condition.



---

**Note:** The priority of a level decreases as its numerical value increases.

This service may cause a preemption of the Current Thread if *newlevel* or the base execution priority level of the Current Thread is a lower execution priority than a thread scheduled by the Current Thread during the time when it is at a priority level higher than its base execution priority level.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service was successful.
- ▶ `RC_REQUESTED_LEVEL_TOO_LOW` if the new execution priority level is lower than the base execution priority level of the thread.

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_LEVEL` if the specified level is not valid.

**Example**

In Example 2-25, the Current Thread raises its current execution level to the maximum level, executes some critical function, and then lowers its level back to its previously defined value.

**Example 2-25. Lower Current Thread Execution Priority Level**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

TLEVEL tlevel, higherlevel;

/* get Current Thread's execution level */
tlevel = TS_GetThreadCurrentLevel ();

/* raise execution level to a higher level */
TS_RaiseThreadLevel (higherlevel);

... perform some critical operation

/* restore execution level to previously defined value */
TS_LowerThreadLevel (tlevel);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**

TS\_RaiseThreadLevel, page 70

# XX\_ORThreadGateBits

Set the bits in a thread gate using logical OR.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_ORThreadGateBits
- 2** TS\_ORThreadGateBits
- 3** KS\_ORThreadGateBits

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_ORThreadGateBits (THREAD thread,  
                           GATEKEY gatekey)
```

## Inputs

- thread*      The handle of the thread containing the thread gate to change. The thread handle can be that of the Current Thread or it can be zero (0), representing the Current Thread.
- gatekey*     A mask containing the bits to set in the thread gate of the specified *thread*. A value of zero (0) is treated as a non-operation.

## Description

The `XX_ORThreadGateBits` kernel service sets bits in the thread gate of the specified *thread*. Because the service uses a logical OR operation to set bits in the thread gate, the operation results in the thread gate having a non-zero value if *gatekey* is non-zero. As a result, the service schedules *thread*. The value of the thread gate remains intact until *thread* reads it and simultaneously resets it using the `TS_GetThreadGateLoadPreset` kernel service, or until a `XX_IncrThreadGate` or `XX_ORThreadGateBits` kernel service occurs before *thread* can execute.

If the content of *gatekey* is zero (0), there is no change to the thread gate and control returns to the caller without scheduling *thread*.

If an ISR calls this service, it causes the scheduling of *thread*. However, execution of *thread* cannot occur until the current ISR and all other ISRs are completed.

A preemption of the Current Thread may occur if *thread* is of a higher priority level than the Current Thread. In such a case, execution of *thread* is immediate. If *thread* is of the same or lower priority level, its execution does not occur until the termination of the Current Thread or at an even later time depending on the order



number of the thread and the scheduling protocol in use for the given priority level.

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service was successful.
- ▶ RC\_GATE\_OVERSIGNAL if gate contains bits that are set (already a one (1)) before the OR operation. This return code is not necessarily an error condition but the service reports it in case the caller needs to take action should it occur.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-26, the Current Thread ORs a bit into the gate of the thread specified in THREADA, which has the additional effect of scheduling THREADA.

### Example 2-26. Set Thread Gate Bits

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

/* OR bit in thread gate */
TS_ORThreadGateBits (THREADA, (GATEKEY)0x800);

... THREADA was scheduled, continue
```

---

## See Also

XX\_ClearThreadGateBits, page 23  
XX\_GetThreadGatePreset, page 54

# XX\_PresetThreadGate

Set the new thread gate value to the current thread gate preset value.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_PresetThreadGate
- 3** KS\_PresetThreadGate

## Synopsis

```
void XX_PresetThreadGate(THREAD thread)
```

## Inputs

*thread*      The handle of the thread containing the thread gate to be set. The thread handle can be that of the Current Thread or it can be zero (0), representing the Current Thread.

## Description

The `XX_PresetThreadGate` kernel service moves the content of the specified *thread*'s thread gate preset into that thread's thread gate value. The new thread gate value is put into effect immediately. There is no effect on the thread gate preset value.



---

**Note:** This service does not cause *thread* to be scheduled.

---

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD` if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD` if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-27 on page 69, the Current Thread changes its thread gate to its thread gate preset values in preparation for taking some new operational path on its next execution cycle.

**Example 2-27.** Set Thread Gate with Thread Gate Preset

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kproject.h"

TS_PresetThreadGate(SELFTHREAD);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_GetThreadGate, page 50  
TS\_GetThreadGateLoadPreset, page 52  
XX\_GetThreadGatePreset, page 54  
XX\_SetThreadGate, page 78  
XX\_SetThreadGatePreset, page 80

# TS\_RaiseThreadLevel

Raise the Current Thread's execution priority level.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC TS_RaiseThreadLevel (TLEVEL newlevel)
```

## Input

*newlevel*    The new execution priority level for the Current Thread. It can be the handle of the level at the desired priority.

## Description

The `TS_RaiseThreadLevel` kernel service temporarily raises the Current Thread's execution priority level to the value specified in *newlevel*. If the value of *newlevel* is zero (0), the service causes no change to the thread's priority level and returns a value indicative of the condition. If *newlevel* specifies an execution priority level less than the Current Thread's base execution priority level, the base execution priority level is substituted for the value of *newlevel* and the operation proceeds but with a notification of the condition.

After raising its execution priority, the thread must lower its execution priority level to the original level before completing operation by calling the `TS_LowerThreadLevel` service.

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service was successful.
- ▶ `RC_ILLEGAL_LEVEL` if the new execution priority level is zero (0).
- ▶ `RC_REQUESTED_LEVEL_TOO_LOW` if the new execution priority level is lower than the Current Thread's base execution priority level.

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_LEVEL` if the specified level is not valid.

## Example

In Example 2-28 on page 71, the Current Thread raises its current execution level to level 2, executes some function, and then lowers its level back to its previously defined value.

**Example 2-28.** Raise Current Thread Execution Priority Level

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

TLEVEL tlevel;

/* get current Thread's execution level */
tlevel = TS_GetThreadCurrentLevel ();

/* raise execution level to 2 */
TS_RaiseThreadLevel ((TLEVEL)2);

... perform some critical operation

/* restore execution level to previously defined value */
TS_LowerThreadLevel (tlevel);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**                      TS\_LowerThreadLevel, page 64

# XX\_ScheduleThread

Schedule execution of a thread.

## Zones

<b>1</b>	IS_ScheduleThread
<b>2</b>	TS_ScheduleThread
<b>3</b>	KS_ScheduleThread

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_ScheduleThread (THREAD thread)
```

## Input

*thread*      The handle of the thread to schedule. A thread value of zero (0) is legal, allowing the Current Thread to schedule itself.

## Description

The XX\_ScheduleThread kernel service schedules the specified *thread* for execution.

If the Current Thread calls this service, *thread* preempts the Current Thread if *thread* has an execution priority level higher than the Current Thread. Otherwise, there is no preemption and *thread* begins execution after the completion of the Current Thread's operation, but not necessarily immediately afterwards.

If the Current Task (in Zone 3) calls this service, *thread* preempts the Current Task regardless of execution priority because *thread* executes in Zone 2.

If an ISR calls this service, the ISR must be completely serviced as well as any other ISRs and threads of higher execution priority levels before *thread* may begin its execution. If the Current Thread (Zone 2) is interrupted and is of lower execution priority than *thread*, the Current Thread is preempted to allow *thread* to start immediately.



---

**Note:** This service does not define or redefine *thread*'s argument pointer or environment argument pointer. As a consequence, the **RTXC/ss** Scheduler passes those two values as they exist at the time of *thread*'s next execution cycle.

---



**Warning:** If a thread has been scheduled more than once since its last execution cycle, it is considered to be over scheduled. Regardless of the number of schedule requests in an over-scheduled condition, only one will cause the thread to execute. The condition is not necessarily an error but the **RTXC** Kernel reports the condition in case the caller needs to take special action.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service was successful.
- ▶ `RC_OVER_SCHEDULED` if the service attempts to schedule a thread and the thread has already been scheduled.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD` if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD` if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-29, the Current Thread schedules the thread specified in `THREADA` to execute.

### Example 2-29. Schedule Thread Execution

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

if (TS_ScheduleThread (THREADA) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... THREADA already scheduled
}
else
{
    ... THREADA was scheduled, continue
}

... continue
```

---

## See Also

TS\_DisableThreadScheduler, page 38

TS\_EnableThreadScheduler, page 39

XX\_ScheduleThreadArg, page 75



# XX\_ScheduleThreadArg

Schedule execution of a thread and define a new argument.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_ScheduleThreadArg
- 2** TS\_ScheduleThreadArg
- 3** KS\_ScheduleThreadArg

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_ScheduleThreadArg (THREAD thread,  
void *parg)
```

## Inputs

- thread*      The handle of the thread to schedule. A *thread* value of zero (0) is legal, allowing the Current Thread can schedule itself.
- parg*          A pointer to the execution argument of the specified *thread*.

## Description

The XX\_ScheduleThreadArg kernel service schedules the specified *thread* for execution using the arguments pointed to by *parg*.

If the Current Thread calls this service, *thread* preempts the Current Thread if *thread* has an execution priority level higher than the Current Thread. Otherwise, there is no preemption and *thread* begins execution after the completion of the Current Thread's operation.

If the Current Task (in Zone 3) calls this service, *thread* preempts the Current Task regardless of execution priority because *thread* executes in Zone 2.

If an ISR calls this service, the ISR must be completely serviced as well as any other ISRs and threads of higher execution priority levels before *thread* may begin its execution. If the Current Thread (Zone 2) is interrupted and is of lower execution priority than *thread*, the Current Thread is preempted to allow *thread* to start immediately.



---

**Note:** The *parg* argument can be a pointer or it can be a scalar datum. If the former, it should not be a null pointer ((void \*)0). If used as a scalar, *parg* can be any legal value.

---



**Warning:** If a thread has been scheduled more than once since its last execution cycle, it is considered to be over scheduled. Regardless of the number of schedule requests in an over-scheduled condition, only one will cause the thread to execute. The condition is not necessarily an error but the **RTXC** Kernel reports the condition in case the caller needs to take special action.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service was successful.
- ▶ `RC_OVER_SCHEDULED` if the service attempts to schedule a thread and the thread has already been scheduled.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD` if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD` if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-30 on page 77, the Current Thread schedules the thread specified in `THREADA` to execute and defines a new argument.

**Example 2-30.** Schedule Thread Execution with New Argument

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

char newbuf[80];

if (TS_ScheduleThreadArg (THREADA, (void *)&newbuf[0]) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... THREADA already scheduled
}
else
{
    ... THREADA was scheduled, continue
}

... continue
```

---

**See Also**                      [XX\\_ScheduleThread](#), page 72

# XX\_SetThreadGate

Set new thread gate and thread gate preset values.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_SetThreadGate
- 3** KS\_SetThreadGate

## Synopsis

```
void XX_SetThreadGate (THREAD thread,  
                       GATEKEY gatekey)
```

## Inputs

- thread*      The handle of the thread containing the thread gate to being set. The thread handle can be that of the Current Thread, which is assumed if the thread handle is zero (0).
- gatekey*     The new value to store in the thread gate and thread gate preset of the specified *thread*.

## Description

The `XX_SetThreadGate` kernel service moves the content of *gatekey* into the specified *thread*'s thread gate and thread gate preset. The new thread gate value is put into effect immediately. The new thread gate preset value does not have any effect until the next time *thread* is scheduled as the result of a call to the `XX_ClearThreadGateBits`, `XX_DecrThreadGate`, or `TS_GetThreadGateLoadPreset` services.



---

**Note:** This service does not cause *thread* to be scheduled.

---

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD` if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD` if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-31, the Current Thread changes its thread gate and thread gate preset values in preparation for taking some new operational path on its next execution cycle.

### Example 2-31. Set Thread Gate and Thread Gate Preset

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */  
  
TS_SetThreadGate (SELFTHREAD, (GATEKEY)5);  
  
... continue
```

---

## See Also

XX\_ClearThreadGateBits, page 23  
XX\_DecrThreadGate, page 26  
XX\_GetThreadGate, page 50  
XX\_IncrThreadGate, page 60  
XX\_ORThreadGateBits, page 66

# XX\_SetThreadGatePreset

Set a new thread gate preset value.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_SetThreadGatePreset
- 3** KS\_SetThreadGatePreset

## Synopsis

```
void XX_SetThreadGatePreset (THREAD thread,  
                             GATEKEY gatekey)
```

## Inputs

- thread*      The handle of the thread containing the thread gate being set. The thread handle can be that of the Current Thread, which is assumed if the thread handle is zero (0).
- gatekey*     The new value to store in the thread gate preset of the specified *thread*.

## Description

The `XX_SetThreadGatePreset` kernel service moves the content of *gatekey* into the specified *thread*'s thread gate preset. The new thread gate preset value does not have any effect until the next time *thread* is scheduled as the result of a call to the `XX_ClearThreadGateBits`, `XX_DecrThreadGate`, or `TS_GetThreadGateLoadPreset` services.

## Output

This service does not returns a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD` if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD` if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-32 on page 81, the Current Thread changes its thread gate preset value in preparation for taking some new operational path on its next execution cycle.

**Example 2-32.** Set Thread Gate Preset

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */  
TS_SetThreadGatePreset (SELFTHREAD, (GATEKEY)5);  
... continue
```

---

**See Also**            [XX\\_GetThreadGatePreset](#), page 54

# INIT\_ThreadClassProp

Initialize the Thread object class properties.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC INIT_ThreadClassProp
(const KCLASSPROP *pclassprop)
```

## Input

*pclassprop*     A pointer to a Thread object class properties structure.

## Description

During the **RTXC** Kernel initialization procedure (usually performed in Zone 3), you must define the kernel objects needed by the **RTXC** Kernel to perform the application. The `INIT_ThreadClassProp` kernel service allocates space for the Thread object class in system RAM. The amount of RAM to allocate, and all other properties of the class, should be specified in the structure pointed to by *pclassprop*.

The `KCLASSPROP` structure has the following organization:

---

```
typedef struct
{
    KATTR attributes;
    KOBJECT n_statics;           /* number of static objects */
    KOBJECT n_dynamics;         /* number of dynamic objects */
    short objsize;              /* used for calculating offsets */
    short totalsize;           /* used to alloc object array RAM */
    ksize_t namelen;           /* length of the name string */
    const char *pstaticnames;
} KCLASSPROP;
```

---

The *attributes* element of the Thread property structure supports the attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 2-1 on page 45.

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ `RC_NO_RAM` if the initialization fails because there is insufficient system RAM available.

## Example

During system initialization, the startup code must initialize the Thread object class before using any kernel service for that class. In Example 2-33 on page 83, the system generation process produced a



KCLASSPROP structure containing the information about the kernel class necessary for its initialization. That structure is referenced externally to the code.

### Example 2-33. Initialize Thread Object Class

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

extern const SYSPROP          sysprop;
extern const KCLASSPROP      threadclassprop;
extern const THREADPROP      threadprop[];

KSRC rtxcinit (void)
{
    KOBJECT objnum;
    KSRC ksrc;

    /* initialize the RTXCdsp workspace and class/object data */
    if ( (ksrc = INIT_SysProp (&sysprop)) != RC_GOOD)
        return ksrc;

    /* initialize the THREAD class/object data */
    if ((ksrc = INIT_ThreadClassProp (&threadclassprop)) != RC_GOOD)
        return ksrc;

    for (objnum = 1; objnum <= threadclassprop.n_statics; objnum++)
    {
        KS_DefThreadProp (objnum, &threadprop[objnum]);
    }

    ... continue with system initialization
}
```

---

### See Also

KS\_GetThreadClassProp, page 44

# XX\_UnscheduleThread

Unschedule execution of a thread.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_ScheduleThread
- 2** TS\_ScheduleThread

## Synopsis

```
void XX_UnscheduleThread (THREAD thread)
```

## Input

*thread*      The handle of the thread to unschedule. A thread value of zero (0) is legal, allowing the Current Thread to unschedule itself.

## Description

The `XX_UnscheduleThread` kernel service unschedules the execution of the specified thread.

Regardless of the zone from which the code entity calls this service, the specified *thread* is unscheduled. It does not receive control of the processor until such time as it is again scheduled and the **RTXC/ss** Scheduler grants it control of the processor.



**Note:** This service has no effect on a thread that is already executing.

---

## Output

This service returns no value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD` if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD` if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 2-34 on page 85, the Current Thread unschedules the execution of the thread specified in `THREADA`.

**Example 2-34.** Unschedule Thread Execution

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */

TS_UnscheduleThread (THREADA);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**           XX\_ScheduleThread



## In This Chapter

We describe the Exception kernel services in detail. The Exception services perform a limited number of special operations while CPU control is in an interrupt service routine.

<b>KS_CloseException.....</b>	<b>88</b>
<b>KS_DefExceptionName.....</b>	<b>90</b>
<b>XX_DefExceptionProp .....</b>	<b>92</b>
<b>INIT_ExceptionClassProp .....</b>	<b>94</b>
<b>KS_GetExceptionClassProp .....</b>	<b>96</b>
<b>KS_GetExceptionName.....</b>	<b>98</b>
<b>XX_GetExceptionProp .....</b>	<b>100</b>
<b>KS_LookupException .....</b>	<b>102</b>
<b>KS_OpenException .....</b>	<b>104</b>
<b>KS_UseException .....</b>	<b>107</b>

# KS\_CloseException

End the use of a dynamic exception.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_CloseException (EXCPTN xeptn)
```

## Input

*xeptn*      The handle of the exception to be closed.

## Description

The `KS_CloseException` kernel service ends the Current Task's use of the dynamic exception specified in *xeptn*. When closing the exception, the kernel detaches the caller's use of it. If the caller is the last user of the exception, the service releases the exception to the free pool of dynamic exceptions for reuse. If there is at least one other task still using the exception, the kernel does not release the exception to the free pool but the service completes successfully.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Exception class during system generation.

---

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service is successful.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the specified exception is not dynamic.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_INUSE` if the specified exception does not correspond to an active dynamic exception.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_INUSE` if the Current Task's use of the specified exception is closed but the exception remains open for use by other tasks.



---

**Note:** `RC_OBJECT_INUSE` does not necessarily indicate an error condition. The calling task must interpret its meaning.

---

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

`FE_ILLEGAL_EXCEPTION` if the specified exception ID is not valid.

## Example

Example 3-1 waits on a signal from another task indicating that it is time to close a dynamic exception. The handle of the dynamic exception is specified in *dynxepthn*. When the signal is received, the Current Task closes the associated exception.

### Example 3-1. Close Exception

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

EXCPTN dynxepthn;
SEMA dynsema;

KS_TestSemaW (dynsema); /* wait for signal */

/* then close exception */
if (KS_CloseException (dynxepthn) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ...something is wrong. Deal with it here;
}
```

---

## See Also

KS\_OpenException, page 104  
XX\_DefExceptionProp, page 92

## KS\_DefExceptionName

Define the name of a previously opened exception.

### Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_DefExceptionName (EXCPTN xeptn,  
                           const char *pname)
```

### Inputs

*xeptn*        The handle of the exception being defined.

*pname*        A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

### Description

The `KS_DefExceptionName` kernel service names or renames the dynamic exception specified in *xeptn*. The service uses the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* for the exception's new name.

Static exceptions cannot be named or renamed under program control.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Exception class during system generation.

This service does not check for duplicate exception names.

---

### Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the exception being named is static.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the *Dynamics* attribute of the exception class is not enabled.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_INUSE` if the specified exception does not correspond to an active dynamic exception.

### Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

`FE_ILLEGAL_EXCEPTION` if the specified exception ID is not valid.



**Example**

Example 3-2 assigns the name `NewExeptn` to the previously opened exception specified in the *dynxeptn* variable so other users may reference it by name.

**Example 3-2. Define Exception Name**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

EXCPTN dynxeptn;

if (KS_DefExceptionName (dynxeptn, "NewExeptn") != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... Probably is a static exception. Deal with it here
}

... naming operation was successful. Continue
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_OpenException, page 104  
KS\_GetExceptionName, page 98  
KS\_LookupException, page 102  
KS\_UseException, page 107

# XX\_DefExceptionProp

Define the properties of an exception.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_DefExceptionProp
- 3** KS\_DefExceptionProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_DefExceptionProp (EXCPTN xeptn,  
                          const EXCPTNPROP *pxeptnprop)
```

## Inputs

- xeptn*            The handle of the exception being defined.
- pxeptnprop*      A pointer to an exception properties structure.

## Description

The XX\_DefExceptionProp kernel service defines the properties of the exception specified in *xeptn* using the values contained in the EXCPTNPROP structure pointed to by *pxeptnprop*.

Example 3-3 shows the organization of the EXCPTNPROP structure.

### Example 3-3. Exception Properties Structure

---

```
typedef struct  
{  
    KATTR attributes;            /* attributes */  
    unsigned char level;        /* processor interrupt level (IPL) */  
    unsigned char vector;       /* vector number*/  
    void (*handler)(void);      /* ISR Prologue address */  
} EXCPTNPROP;
```

---

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Error

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_EXCEPTION if the specified exception ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_NULL\_EXCEPTIONHANDLER if the specified exception handler address is null.

## Example

Example 3-4 on page 93 allocates a dynamic exception with the following properties: The interrupt level is 5, the vector for the interrupt is 64. The exception function is Handler.

### Example 3-4. Define Exception Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */
#include "ktask.h"            /* TASK5 */

EXCPTN dynxeptn;
static EXCPTNPROP xeptnprop;
extern void Handler (void);

if (KS_OpenException ((char *)0, &dynxeptn) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... something wrong. Deal with it here
}

/* define the properties of the dynamic exception */
xeptnprop.attributes = 0;
xeptnprop.level = 5;
xeptnprop.vector = 64;
xeptnprop.handler = Handler;
KS_DefExceptionProp (dynxeptn, &xeptnprop);

    ...continue processing
```

---

## See Also

XX\_GetExceptionProp, page 100  
INIT\_ExceptionClassProp, page 94  
KS\_OpenException, page 104

# INIT\_ExceptionClassProp

Initialize the Exception object class properties.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC INIT_ExceptionClassProp  
    (const KCLASSPROP *pclassprop)
```

## Inputs

*pclassprop*     A pointer to an exception object class properties structure.

## Description

During the **RTXC** Kernel initialization procedure, you must define the kernel objects needed by the kernel to perform the application. The `INIT_ExceptionClassProp` kernel service allocates space for the exception object class in system RAM. The amount of RAM to allocate, and all other properties of the class, are specified in the `KCLASSPROP` structure pointed to by *pclassprop*.

Example 2-13 on page 44 shows the organization of the `KCLASSPROP` structure.

The *attributes* element of the Exception `KCLASSPROP` structure supports the class property attributes and masks listed in Table 3-1 on page 96.

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ `RC_NO_RAM` if the initialization fails because there is insufficient system RAM available.

## Example

During system initialization, the startup code must initialize the Exception object class before using any kernel service for that class. The system generation process produces a `KCLASSPROP` structure containing the information about the kernel object necessary for its initialization. Example 3-5 on page 95 references that structure externally to the code module.

**Example 3-5. Initialize Exception Object Class**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

extern const SYSPROP sysprop;
extern const KCLASSPROP xeptnclassprop;

KSRC userinit (void)
{
    KSRC ksrc;

    /* initialize the kernel workspace and allocate RAM */
    /* for required classes, etc. */

    if ((ksrc = InitSysProp (&sysprop)) != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("Kernel initialization failure");
        return (ksrc); /* end initialization process */
    }
    /* kernel is initialized */

    /* Need to initialize the necessary kernel object classes */

    /* Initialize the Exception kernel object class */
    if ((ksrc = INIT_ExceptionClassProp (&xeptnclassprop))
        != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("No RAM for Exception init");
        return (ksrc); /* end initialization process */
    }

    ... Continue with system initialization
}
```

---

**See Also**[INIT\\_SysProp, page 284](#)[KS\\_GetExceptionClassProp, page 96](#)

# KS\_GetExceptionClassProp

Get the Exception object class properties.

## Synopsis

```
const KCLASSPROP * KS_GetExceptionClassProp
(int *pint)
```

## Input

*pint*            A pointer to a variable in which to store the number of available dynamic exceptions.

## Description

The `KS_GetExceptionClassProp` kernel service obtains a pointer to the `KCLASSPROP` structure that was used during system initialization by the `INIT_ExceptionClassProp` service to initialize the exception object class properties. If *pint* is not null (`((int *)0)`), the service returns the number of available dynamic exceptions in the variable pointed to by *pint*.

Example 2-13 on page 44 shows the organization of the `KCLASSPROP` structure.

The *attributes* element of the `Exception KCLASSPROP` structure supports the class property attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 3-1.

**Table 3-1.** Exception Class Attributes and Masks

Attribute	Mask
Static Names	ATTR_STATIC_NAMES
Dynamics	ATTR_DYNAMICS

## Output

If successful, this service returns a pointer to a `KCLASSPROP` structure.

If the `Exception` class is not initialized, the service returns a null pointer (`((KCLASSPROP *)0)`).

## Example

Example 3-6 on page 97 accesses to the information contained in the `KCLASSPROP` structure for the `Exception` object class.

**Example 3-6.** Read Exception Object Class Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

KCLASSPROP *pexceptnclassprop;
int free_dyn;

/* Get the Exception kernel object class properties */
if ((pexceptnclassprop = KS_GetExceptionClassProp (&free_dyn))
    == (KCLASSPROP *)0)
{
    putline ("Exception Class not initialized");
}
else
{
    ... Exception class information is available for use
    "free_dyn" contains the number of available dynamic exceptions
}
```

---

**See Also**                      INIT\_ExceptionClassProp, page 94

# KS\_GetExceptionName

Get the name of an exception.

## Synopsis

```
char * KS_GetExceptionName (EXCPTN xeptn)
```

## Input

*xeptn*      The handle of the exception being queried.

## Description

The KS\_GetExceptionName kernel service obtains a pointer to the null-terminated string containing the name of the static or dynamic exception specified in *xeptn*.

## Output

If the exception has a name, this service returns a pointer to the null-terminated name string.

If the exception has no name, the service returns a null pointer ((char \*)0).

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

FE\_ILLEGAL\_EXCEPTION if the specified exception ID is not valid.

## Example

Example 3-7 reports the name of the dynamic exception specified in *dynxeptn*.

### Example 3-7. Read Exception Name

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"         /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

static char buf[128];

EXCPTN dynxeptn;
char *pname;

if ((pname = KS_GetExceptionName (dynxeptn)) == (char *)0)
    sprintf (buf, "Exception %d has no name", dynxeptn);
else
    sprintf (buf, "The name of Exception %d is %s", dynxeptn,
            pname);

putline (buf);
```

---



## See Also

KS\_DefExceptionName, page 90

KS\_OpenException, page 104

# XX\_GetExceptionProp

Get the properties of an exception.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetExceptionProp
- 3** KS\_GetExceptionProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_GetExceptionProp (EXCPTN xeptn,  
                          EXCPTNPROP *pxeptnprop)
```

## Inputs

- xeptn*            The handle of the exception being queried.
- pxeptnprop*      A pointer to an exception properties structure.

## Description

The XX\_GetExceptionProp kernel service obtains all of the property values of the exception specified in *xeptn* in a single call. The service stores the property values in the EXCPTNPROP structure pointed to by *pxeptnprop*.

Example 3-3 on page 92 shows the organization of the EXCPTNPROP structure.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_EXCEPTION if the specified exception ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_SEMA if the specified semaphore has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 3-8 on page 101, the Current Task needs to change the interrupt level of the dynamic exception specified in *dynxeptn* to 3 but does not want to change any of the other properties. The task first obtains the current properties, then modifies the *level* element in the EXCPTNPROP structure. The task then uses XX\_DefExceptionProp to redefine the properties of the exception.

**Example 3-8.** Read Exception Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

EXCPTN dynxeptn;
EXCPTNPROP xeptnprop;

/* get the current exception properties */
KS_GetExceptionProp (dynxeptn, &xeptnprop);

/* modify just the level element */
xeptnprop.level = 3;

/* define the new exception properties */
KS_DefExceptionProp (dynxeptn, &xeptnprop);
```

---

**See Also**            [XX\\_DefExceptionProp](#), page 92

# KS\_LookupException

Look up an exception's name to get its handle.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_LookupException (const char *pname,  
                          EXCPTN *pexceptn)
```

## Inputs

*pname*      A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*pexceptn*    A pointer to a variable in which to store the matching exception's handle.

## Description

The `KS_LookupException` kernel service obtains the handle of a static or dynamic exception whose name matches the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*. The lookup process terminates when it finds a match between the specified string and a static or dynamic exception name or when it finds no match. The service stores the matching exception's handle in the variable pointed to by *pexceptn*. The service searches dynamic names, if any, first.



---

**Note:** To use this service on static mutexes, you must enable the *Static Names* attribute of the Exception class during system generation.

This service has no effect on the use registration of the specified exception by the Current Task.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of exception names in use.

---

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the search succeeds. The service stores the matching exception's handle in the variable pointed to by *pexceptn*.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the service finds no matching exception name.

## Example

In Example 3-9, the Current Task needs to use the dynamic exception named `Dynxepn2`. If the exception is found, the task sends its exception handle to the console in a brief message.

### Example 3-9. Look Up Exception by Name

---

```
#include <stdio.h>          /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"        /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

static char buf[128];

EXCPTN dynxepn;

/* lookup the exception name to see if it exists */
if (KS_LookupException ("Dynxepn2", &dynxepn) != RC_GOOD)
{
    putline ("Exception Dynxepn2 name not found");
}
else /* Exception exists */
{
    sprintf (buf, "Dynxepn2 is Exception %d", dynxepn);
    putline (buf);
}
```

---

## See Also

`KS_DefExceptionName`, page 90  
`KS_OpenException`, page 104

# KS\_OpenException

Allocate and name a dynamic exception.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_OpenException (const char *pname,  
                        EXCPTN *pexceptn)
```

## Inputs

*pname*      A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*pexceptn*    A pointer to a variable in which to store the allocated exception's handle.

## Description

The `KS_OpenException` kernel service allocates, names, and obtains the handle of a dynamic exception. If a dynamic exception is available and there is no existing exception, static or dynamic, with a name matching the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*, the service allocates a dynamic exception and applies the name referenced by *pname* to the new exception. The service stores the handle of the new dynamic exception in the variable pointed to by *pexceptn*. The kernel stores only the address of the name internally, which means that the same array cannot be used to build multiple dynamic exception names.

If *pname* is a null pointer (`((char *)0)`), the service does not assign a name to the dynamic exception. However, if *pname* points to a null string, the name is legal as long as no other exception is already using a null string as its name.

If the service finds an existing exception with a matching name, it does not open a new exception and returns a value indicating an unsuccessful operation.



**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Exception class during system generation.

If *pname* is not null (`((char *)0)`), the time required to perform this operation is determined by the number of exception names in use.

If the pointer to the timer name is null, no search of exception names takes place and the time to perform the service is fixed. You can define the exception name at a later time with a call to the `KS_DefExceptionName` service.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_ALREADY_EXISTS` if the name search finds another exception whose name matches the given string.
- ▶ `RC_NO_OBJECT_AVAILABLE` if the name search finds no match but all dynamic exceptions are in use.

## Example

Example 3-10 allocates a dynamic exception and names it `SCIChnl2xeptn`. If the name is found to be in use or if there are no dynamic exceptions available, the task sends an appropriate message to the console.

### Example 3-10. Allocate and Name Exception

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

KSRC ksrc;
EXCPTN dynxeptn;

if ((ksrc = KS_OpenException ("SCIChnl2xeptn", &dynxeptn))
    != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_OBJECT_ALREADY_EXISTS)
        putline ("SCIChnl2xeptn name in use");
    else if (ksrc == RC_NO_OBJECT_AVAILABLE)
        putline ("No dynamic exceptions available");
    else
        putline ("Exceptions are not a defined class");
}
else
{
    ... Exception was opened correctly. Okay to use it now
}
```

---

## **See Also**

KS\_CloseException, page 88

KS\_LookupException, page 102

KS\_UseException, page 107



# KS\_UseException

Look up a dynamic exception by name and mark it for use.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_UseException (const char *pname,  
                      EXCPTN *pexceptn)
```

## Inputs

*pname*      A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*pexceptn*    A pointer to a variable in which to store the allocated exception's handle.

## Description

The `KS_UseException` kernel service acquires the handle of a dynamic exception by looking up the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* in the list of exception names. If there is a match, the service registers the exception for future use by the Current Task and stores the matching exception's handle in the variable pointed to by *pexceptn*. This procedure allows the Current Task to reference the dynamic exception successfully in subsequent kernel service calls.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Exception class during system generation.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of exception names in use.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the search is successful. The service also stores the matching exception's handle in the variable pointed to by *pexceptn*.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the given name belongs to a static exception.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the service finds no matching exception name.

## Example

Example 3-11 locates a dynamic exception named `DynSCIXeptn3`, prepares it for subsequent use, and obtains its exception handle. It

then sends a message to the console indicating the handle of the exception if successful or an error message if unsuccessful.

### **Example 3-11.** Read Exception Handle and Register It

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"         /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

static char buf[128];

EXCPTN dynxepn;

if (KS_UseException ("DynSCIxepn3", &dynxepn) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... exception is either static or not found
    ... need to handle that here
}
else
{
    /* Exception was found and its handle is in dynxepn. */
    sprintf (buf, "DynSCIxepn3 is Exception %d", dynxepn);
    putline (buf);
}
```

---

### **See Also**

XX\_DefExceptionProp, page 92  
KS\_DefExceptionName, page 90  
KS\_OpenException, page 104

## In This Chapter

We describe the Pipe kernel services in detail. The Pipe kernel services move data between a single producer and a single consumer and maintain information about pipe states.

<b>KS_ClosePipe.....</b>	<b>110</b>
<b>XX_DefPipeAction .....</b>	<b>112</b>
<b>XX_DefPipeProp .....</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>KS_DefPipeName.....</b>	<b>118</b>
<b>XX_GetEmptyPipeBuf .....</b>	<b>120</b>
<b>XX_GetFullPipeBuf.....</b>	<b>122</b>
<b>XX_GetPipeBufSize .....</b>	<b>124</b>
<b>KS_GetPipeClassProp .....</b>	<b>126</b>
<b>KS_GetPipeName.....</b>	<b>128</b>
<b>XX_GetPipeProp .....</b>	<b>130</b>
<b>XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf.....</b>	<b>132</b>
<b>XX_JamFullPipeBuf .....</b>	<b>136</b>
<b>KS_LookupPipe .....</b>	<b>138</b>
<b>KS_OpenPipe .....</b>	<b>140</b>
<b>INIT_PipeClassProp .....</b>	<b>142</b>
<b>XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf.....</b>	<b>144</b>
<b>XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf.....</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf.....</b>	<b>149</b>
<b>XX_PutFullPipeBuf.....</b>	<b>152</b>
<b>KS_UsePipe .....</b>	<b>154</b>

# KS\_ClosePipe

End the use of a dynamic pipe.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_ClosePipe (PIPE pipe)
```

## Input

*pipe*            The handle of the pipe to close.

## Description

The KS\_UsePipe kernel service ends the Current Task's use of the specified dynamic *pipe*. When closing *pipe*, the kernel detaches the caller's use of it. If the caller is the last task associated with *pipe*, the kernel releases *pipe* to the free pool of dynamic pipes for reuse. If there is at least one other task still referencing *pipe*, the kernel does not release the pipe to the free pool but the service completes successfully.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Pipe class during system generation.

---

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service was successful.
- ▶ RC\_STATIC\_OBJECT if the specified pipe is not dynamic.
- ▶ RC\_OBJECT\_NOT\_INUSE if the specified pipe does not correspond to an active dynamic pipe.
- ▶ RC\_OBJECT\_INUSE if the Current Task's use of the specified pipe is closed but the pipe remains associated with other tasks.



---

**Note:** The KSRC value does not necessarily indicate an error condition. The calling task must interpret its meaning.

---

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_PIPE if the specified pipe ID is not valid.

## Example

In Example 4-1, the Current Task waits on a signal from another task indicating that it is time to close the active dynamic pipe specified in `dynpipe`. When the signal is received, the Current Task closes the associated pipe.

### Example 4-1. Close Pipe Upon Receiving Signal

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

PIPE dynpipe;
SEMA dynsema;

KS_TestSema (dynsema);      /* wait for signal */

/* then close the pipe */
if (KS_ClosePipe (dynpipe) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... something is wrong. Deal with it
}
... continue                /* pipe closed successfully */
```

---

## See Also

KS\_OpenPipe, page 140  
KS\_UsePipe, page 154

## XX\_DefPipeAction

Define action to perform following XX\_PutFullPipeBuf or XX\_PutEmptyPipeBuf services.

### Zones

- 2** TS\_DefPipeAction
- 3** KS\_DefPipeAction

### Synopsis

```
void XX_DefPipeAction (PIPE pipe, PIPEACTION action,  
                      THREAD thread, PIPECOND cond)
```

### Input

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| <i>pipe</i>   | The handle of the pipe to be associated with the callback function.  |
| <i>action</i> | <p>A code for the action to perform as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ SCHEDULETHREAD—Schedule thread at the completion of the operation on <i>pipe</i>.</li><li>▶ DECRTHREADGATE—Decrement the thread gate value of <i>thread</i> upon completing the operation on <i>pipe</i>.</li></ul>  |
| <i>thread</i> | The handle of the thread on which to perform the end action operation.   |
| <i>cond</i>   | <p>A value of PIPECOND type specifying the action to take according to the completed pipe operation. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ PUTFULL—If the pipe operation puts full buffers into the pipe (XX_PutFullPipeBuf, XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, XX_JamFullPipeBuf, or XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf).</li><li>▶ PUTEMPTY—For a pipe operation that puts empty buffers into a pipe (XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf or XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf).</li></ul> |

### Description

The XX\_DefPipeAction kernel service defines the action to take following a service that puts a buffer (empty or full) into the specified *pipe*. The XX\_PutFullPipeBuf or XX\_PutEmptyPipeBuf services perform the specified end action operation, if defined, on

the specified *thread* when the service completes. If the pipe service to put an empty or full buffer into the pipe is called from an ISR, the end action operation performs a Zone 1 service, `IS_ScheduleThread` or `IS_DecrThreadGate`, corresponding to the action code `SCHEDULETHREAD` or `DECRTHREADGATE`, respectively. If the pipe service to put an empty or full buffer into the pipe is called from a thread, the end action operation performs a Zone 2 service, `TS_ScheduleThread` or `TS_DecrThreadGate`, corresponding to the action code `SCHEDULETHREAD` or `DECRTHREADGATE`, respectively.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_PIPE` if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_PIPE` if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ `FE_INVALID_PIPECOND` if the specified pipe condition value is not either `PUTEMPTY` or `PUTFULL`.
- ▶ `FE_INVALID_PIPEACTION` if the specified pipe action value is not one of the four possible actions.
- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD` if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD` if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 4-2 on page 114, the gate for the thread specified in `THREADA` needs to be decremented every time a full buffer is put into the pipe specified in `PIPEA`. When the value of the `THREADA` thread gate reaches zero, `THREADA` is scheduled to execute. The Current Thread defines the action that is to take place on `PIPEA`.

**Example 4-2. Define Pipe End Action Operation**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */
#include "kpipe.h"            /* PIPEA */

/* define pipe action on PIPEA to decrement gate */
TS_DefPipeAction (PIPEA, DECRTHREADGATE, THREADA, PUTFULL);

/* define the thread gate and thread gate preset for THREADA */
TS_DefThreadGate (THREADA, (GATEKEY)2);
... continue

/* ISR device handler function that puts a full buffer into PIPEA */
void devhandler (void)
{
    ...first part of ISR

/* The following action puts the buffer into PIPEA and causes */
/* THREADA thread gate to be decremented because of the defined */
/* pipe action. */
/* THREADA is scheduled if the decrement causes the thread */
/* gate to become zero (0) */

/* In the following statement, bufptr points to the full buffer */
/* and bufsize contains the size of the buffer as filled */

    IS_PutFullPipeBuf (PIPEA, bufptr, bufsize);

    ...more device handler
    return
}
```

---



# XX\_DefPipeProp

Define the properties of a pipe.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_DefPipeProp
- 3** KS\_DefPipeProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_DefPipeProp (PIPE pipe, PIPEPROP ppipeprop)
```

## Inputs

- pipe*                      The handle of the pipe being defined.
- ppipeprop*                A pointer to a pipe properties structure.

## Description

The XX\_DefPipeProp kernel service defines the properties of the specified *pipe* using the values contained in the PIPEPROP structure pointed to by *ppipeprop*. You may use this service on static or dynamically allocated pipes. It is typically used to define a static pipe during system startup or a dynamic pipe during runtime which has been previously allocated with the KS\_OpenPipe kernel service.

Example 4-3 shows the organization of the PIPEPROP structure.

### Example 4-3. Pipe Properties Structure

---

```
typedef struct _pipeprop
{
    KATTR attributes; /* pipe attributes */
    KCOUNT numbufs; /* number of buffers */
    ksize_t bufsize; /* maximum usable buffer size */
    void * buf; /* pipe buffer base address */
    void ** fullbase; /* base address of full buffers pointers */
    void ** freebase; /* base address of free buffers pointers */
    int * sizebase;
} PIPEPROP;
```

---

When using this service with static pipes defined as part of the system configuration process, the properties are fully specified. In the case of static pipes, the pipe's buffers are generally allocated in a contiguous manner.

When using this service to define the properties of a dynamic pipe, it is possible to define the properties less than fully and still be able

to make limited references to the pipe. It is possible to define the pipe buffer base address, `buf`, as a null pointer `((void *)0)` and then allocate space for each buffer in the pipe, defining each by using the `XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf` kernel service until all buffers are defined. With this technique, the buffers are not necessarily allocated contiguously.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Error

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_PIPE` if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_ZERO_PIPENUMBUF` if the number of buffers in the specified pipe is zero.
- ▶ `FE_ZERO_PIPEBUFSIZE` if the buffer size in the specified pipe is zero.
- ▶ `FE_NULL_PIPEFULLBASE` if the specified Pipe full base address is null.
- ▶ `FE_NULL_PIPEFREEBASE` if the specified Pipe free base address is null.
- ▶ `FE_NULL_PIPESIZEBASE` if the specified Pipe base size address is null.

## Examples

During system initialization, the startup routine must create and initialize the Pipe object class and define the properties of all the static Pipes before information can be passed through Pipes, as illustrated in Example 4-4 on page 117.

**Example 4-4.** Define Pipe Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

extern const KCLASSPROP pipeclassprop;
extern const PIPEPROP pipeprop[];

KSRC ksrc;
int objnum;

/* initialize the PIPE class/object data */
if ((ksrc = INIT_PipeClassProp (&pipeclassprop)) != RC_GOOD)
    return ksrc;

for (objnum = 1; objnum <= pipeclassprop.n_statics; objnum++)
{
    TS_DefPipeProp (objnum, &pipeprop[objnum]);
}

... continue
```

---

**See Also**[XX\\_GetPipeProp](#), page 130

## KS\_DefPipeName

Define the name of a previously opened dynamic pipe.

### Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_DefPipeName (PIPE pipe, const char *pname)
```

### Inputs

*pipe*            The handle of the pipe being defined.

*pname*           A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

### Description

The `KS_GetPipeName` kernel service names or renames the specified dynamic *pipe*. The service uses the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* for the new name. The kernel only stores *pname* internally, which means the same array cannot be used to build multiple dynamic pipe names. Static pipes cannot be named or renamed under program control.



**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Pipe class during system generation.

This service does not check for duplicate pipe names.

---

### Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the pipe being named is static.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the *Dynamics* attribute of the Pipe class is not enabled.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_INUSE` if the dynamic pipe being named is still in the free pool of dynamic pipes.

### Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_PIPE` if the specified pipe ID is not valid.

**Example**

Example 4-5 assigns the name `NewPipe` to the pipe specified in `dynpipe` so other users may reference it by name.

**Example 4-5. Define Dynamic Pipe Name**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

PIPE dynpipe;

if (KS_DefPipeName (dynpipe, "NewPipe") != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... Probably is a static pipe. Deal with it here.
}

... else the naming operation was successful. Continue
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_GetPipeName, page 128  
KS\_LookupPipe, page 138  
KS\_UsePipe, page 154

# XX\_GetEmptyPipeBuf

Get an empty buffer from a specified pipe.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_GetEmptyPipeBuf
- 2** TS\_GetEmptyPipeBuf
- 3** KS\_GetEmptyPipeBuf

## Synopsis

```
void * XX_GetEmptyPipeBuf (PIPE pipe)
```

## Input

*pipe*            The handle of the pipe from which to get an empty buffer.

## Description

The KS\_UsePipe kernel service removes the next available empty buffer from the specified *pipe* and returns a pointer to the empty buffer to the caller. If there is no buffer available, the service returns a null pointer ((void \*)0).

## Output

This service returns a pointer to the empty buffer if a buffer is available. If no buffer is available, the service returns a null pointer ((void \*)0).

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_PIPE if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_PIPE if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 4-6 on page 121, the Current Thread gets an empty buffer from the pipe specified in PIPEA and, if a valid buffer pointer is returned, performs some operation on the buffer.

**Example 4-6.** Get Empty Buffer from Pipe

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kpipe.h"            /* PIPEA */

void threadxyz ((void *)0, (void *)0)
{
    char *pipebuf;
    int pipebufsize;

    /* get size of pipe's buffers */
    pipebufsize = TS_GetPipeBufSize (PIPEA);

    /* get empty pipe buffer and test for success */
    if ((pipebuf = TS_GetEmptyPipeBuf (PIPEA)) == (char *)0);

    /* test if empty buffer is available */
    if (pipebuf == (char *)0)
    {
        ... no empty buffers, deal with it here
    }
    else
    {
        ... perform operation on fill the empty buffer
    }
    ...when buffer is full, put it into the pipe
    TS_PutFullPipeBuf (PIPEA, (void *)pipebuf, pipebufsize);
    ... continue
}
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_UsePipe, page 154  
XX\_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, page 132  
XX\_JamFullPipeBuf, page 136  
XX\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf, page 144  
XX\_PutEmptyPipeBuf, page 147  
XX\_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, page 149  
XX\_PutFullPipeBuf, page 152

# XX\_GetFullPipeBuf

Get a full buffer from a specified pipe.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_GetFullPipeBuf
- 2** TS\_GetFullPipeBuf
- 3** KS\_GetFullPipeBuf

## Synopsis

```
void * XX_GetFullPipeBuf (PIPE pipe, int *pbufsize)
```

## Inputs

- pipe*            The handle of the pipe from which to get a full buffer.
- pbufsize*        A pointer to a variable that will, upon completion of the service, contain the actual size of the full buffer whose pointer is being returned as the value of the service.

## Description

The XX\_GetFullPipeBuf kernel service removes the next available full buffer from the specified *pipe* and returns a pointer to the full buffer to the caller. If there is no buffer available, the service returns a null pointer ((void \*)0) and the variable pointed to by *pbufsize* is set to 0.

## Output

This service returns a pointer to the full buffer if a buffer is available. If no buffer is available, the service returns a null pointer ((void \*)0) and the variable pointed to by *pbufsize* is set to 0.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_PIPE if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_PIPE if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ FE\_NULL\_PIPEPBUFSIZE if the pointer to the buffer size is null.

## Example

In Example 4-7 on page 123, the Current Thread gets a full buffer from the pipe specified in PIPEA and, if a valid buffer pointer is returned, performs some operation on the buffer.



**Example 4-7. Get Full Buffer from Pipe**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kpipe.h"            /* PIPEA */

void threadxyz ((void *)0, (void *)0)
{
    char *pipebuf;
    int bsize, i;

    /* get full pipe buffer and its size and test if OK */
    if ((pipebuf = TS_GetFullPipeBuf (PIPEA, &bsize)) == (char *)0);

    /* test if full buffer available */
    if (pipebuf == (char *)0)
    {
        ... no full buffers, deal with it here
    }
    else
    {
        for (i=0; i<=bsize; i++)
        {
            ... perform operation on full buffer
        }
        /* when buffer is empty, return it to the pipe */
        TS_PutEmptyPipeBuf (PIPEA, pipebuf);
    }
}

... continue
}
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_DefPipeProp, page 115  
XX\_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, page 132  
XX\_JamFullPipeBuf, page 136  
XX\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf, page 144  
XX\_PutEmptyPipeBuf, page 147  
XX\_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, page 149  
XX\_PutFullPipeBuf, page 152

# XX\_GetPipeBufSize

Get the maximum usable size of buffers in the specified pipe.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_GetPipeBufSize
- 2** TS\_GetPipeBufSize
- 3** KS\_GetPipeBufSize

## Synopsis

```
int XX_GetPipeBufSize (PIPE pipe)
```

## Input

*pipe*            The handle of the pipe being queried.

## Description

The XX\_GetPipeBufSize kernel service allows the caller to obtain the maximum usable size of buffers in the specified *pipe*.



**Warning:** It is possible that a pipe may contain buffers of unequal sizes. It is the responsibility of the programmer to ensure that all buffers used in a given pipe have sufficient RAM to meet or exceed the maximum useful buffer size specified for the pipe. Failure to do so may lead to undesirable or unpredictable results.

---

## Output

This service returns an `int` type value containing the buffer size for *pipe*.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_PIPE` if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_PIPE` if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 4-8 on page 125, the Current Thread reads the buffer size and fills an empty buffer with data. It then puts the full buffer into the pipe specified in `PIPEA`.

**Example 4-8. Read Pipe Buffer Size**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kpipe.h"            /* PIPEA */

int buffersize, i;
char *pipebuf;

/* get pipe buffer size */
buffersize = TS_GetPipeBufSize (PIPEA);

/* get empty pipe buffer */
pipebuf = TS_GetEmptyPipeBuf (PIPEA);

/* fill buffer with data */
for (i = 0; i <= buffersize; i++)
{
    ... put  entry into pipebuf
}

/* put full buffer into Pipe */
TS_PutFullPipeBuff (PIPEA, pipebuf, buffersize);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**            [XX\\_DefPipeProp](#), page 115

## KS\_GetPipeClassProp

Get the Pipe class properties.

### Synopsis

```
const KCLASSPROP * KS_GetPipeClassProp (int *pint)
```

### Input

*pint*            A pointer to an integer variable in which to store the current number of unused dynamic pipes.

### Description

The KS\_GetPipeClassProp kernel service obtains a pointer to the KCLASSPROP structure that was used during system initialization by the INIT\_PipeClassProp service to initialize the Pipe object class properties.

If the *pint* pointer contains a non-zero address, the current number of unused dynamic pipes is stored in the indicated address. If *pint* contains a null pointer ((int \*)0), the service ignores the parameter. If the Pipe object class properties do not include the *Dynamics* attribute, the service stores a value of zero (0) at the address contained in *pint*.

The KCLASSPROP structure has the following organization:

---

```
typedef struct
{
    KATTR attributes;
    KOBJECT n_statics;           /* number of static objects */
    KOBJECT n_dynamics;         /* number of dynamic objects */
    short objsize;              /* used for calculating offsets */
    short totalsize;           /* used to alloc object array RAM */
    ksize_t namelen;           /* length of the name string */
    const char *pstaticnames;
} KCLASSPROP;
```

---

The attributes element of the Pipe property structure supports the class property attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 4-1 on page 127.

**Table 4-1.** Pipe Class Attributes and Masks

Attribute	Mask
Static Names	ATTR_STATIC_NAMES
Dynamics	ATTR_DYNAMICS

## Output

If successful, this service returns a pointer to a `KCLASSPROP` structure.

If the Pipe class is not initialized, the service returns a null pointer (`((KCLASSPROP *)0)`).

If *pint* is not null (`((int *)0)`), the service returns the number of available dynamic pipes in the variable pointed to by *pint*.

## Example

In Example 4-9, the Current Pipe needs access to the information contained in the `KCLASSPROP` structure for the Pipe object class.

### Example 4-9. Read Pipe Object Class Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

KCLASSPROP *ppipeclassprop;
int free_dyn;

/* Get the pipe kernel object class properties */
if ((ppipeclassprop = KS_GetPipeClassProp (&free_dyn))
    == (KCLASSPROP *)0)
{
    putline ("Pipe Class not initialized");
}
else
{
    ... pipe object class properties are available for use
    "free_dyn" contains the number of available dynamic pipes
}
```

---

## See Also

`INIT_PipeClassProp`, page 142

# KS\_GetPipeName

Get the pipe's name.

## Synopsis

```
char * KS_GetPipeName (PIPE pipe)
```

## Input

*pipe*            The handle of the pipe being queried.

## Description

The KS\_GetPipeName kernel service obtains a pointer to the null-terminated string containing the name of the specified *pipe*. The pipe may be static or dynamic.



**Note:** To use this service on static pipes, you must enable the *Static Names* attribute of the Pipe class during system generation.

---

## Output

If *pipe* has a name, this service returns a pointer to the null-terminated name string.

If *pipe* has no name, the service returns a null pointer ((char \*) 0).

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

FE\_ILLEGAL\_PIPE if the specified pipe ID is not valid.

## Example

In Example 4-10 on page 129, the Current Task needs to report the name of the dynamic pipe specified in dynpipe.

**Example 4-10. Read Pipe Name**

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"         /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

static char buf[128];
PIPE dynpipe;
char *pname;

if ((pname = KS_GetPipeName (dynpipe)) == (char *)0)
    sprintf (buf, "Pipe %d has no name", dynpipe);
else
    sprintf (buf, "Pipe %d name is %s", dynpipe, pname);

putline (buf);
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_DefPipeName, page 115  
KS\_LookupPipe, page 138  
XX\_DefPipeProp, page 115

# XX\_GetPipeProp

Get the pipe's properties.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetPipeProp
- 3** KS\_GetPipeProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_GetPipeProp (PIPE pipe, PIPEPROP *ppipeprop)
```

## Inputs

- pipe*            The handle of the pipe being queried.
- ppipeprop*      The pointer to the pipe property structure in which to store the properties of the specified *pipe*.

## Description

The XX\_GetPipeProp kernel service obtains all of the property values of the specified *pipe* in a single call. The *pipe* input argument may specify a static or a dynamic pipe. The service stores the property values in the PIPEPROP structure pointed to by *ppipeprop* and returns to the caller.

Example 4-3 on page 115 shows the organization of the PIPEPROP structure.

## Output

This service returns *pipe*'s properties in the property structure pointed to by *ppipeprop*.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_PIPE if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_PIPE if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 4-11 on page 131, the Current Thread reads the properties of the pipe specified in PIPEA, changes some value in the property structure, then redefines PIPEA with the new properties.



**Example 4-11.** Read Pipe Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kpipe.h"            /* PIPEA */

PIPEPROP  pipeprop;

/* get current Pipe Properties */
TS_GetPipeProp (PIPEA, &pipeprop);

... make changes to the properties

/* define the new Pipe properties */
TS_DefPipeProp (PIPEA, &pipeprop);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**            [XX\\_DefPipeProp](#), page 115

## XX\_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf

Put a full buffer at the front of a pipe and then get an empty buffer from the same pipe.

### Zones

<b>1</b>	IS_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf
<b>2</b>	TS_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf
<b>3</b>	KS_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf

### Synopsis

```
void * XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf (PIPE pipe,  
    void * pbuf, int bufsize, KSRC * pksrc)
```

### Inputs

<i>pipe</i>	The handle of the pipe to use.
<i>pbuf</i>	The pointer to the full buffer to be put at the front of the specified <i>pipe</i> .
<i>bufsize</i>	The actual size of the buffer as filled. This number must be less than or equal to the maximum usable buffer size for the specified <i>pipe</i> .
<i>pksrc</i>	A pointer to KSRC type return code.

### Description

The `XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf` kernel service allows the specified *pipe*'s producer to put a full buffer into *pipe* at its head rather than at the tail as is the normal case. At the same time, the service gets the next available empty buffer from the same pipe and returns the pointer to the empty buffer to the caller.

It is necessary for the producer to state the size of the buffer as filled so that *pipe*'s consumer knows how much data there is to process. The size of the filled buffer must be less than or equal to the maximum usable size of the buffers for *pipe*.

It is permissible to define *pbuf* as a null pointer (`((void *)0)`) to indicate there is no full buffer to put into the pipe. If *pbuf* is null, the service ignores it and operates identically to the `XX_GetEmptyPipeBuf` service, returning the pointer to the next available empty buffer. This technique may be useful when employing a loop in a producer that uses the combination pipe operation. The first time through the loop, there is no full buffer but

the service allocates an empty buffer allowing the producer to begin operation.

If *pbuf* is a null pointer, the service ignores the value of *bufsize*. Ideally, in this situation, *bufsize* would contain a value of zero (0).

## Output

This service returns the pointer to the next available empty buffer in *pipe* if one is available. If the pipe contains no available empty buffer, the service returns a null pointer `((void *)0)`.

The service also returns a `KSRC` type value through the *pksrc* pointer indicating how the service performed. The possible values are:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service was successful.
- ▶ `RC_PIPE_FULL` if the specified pipe does not have room for another full buffer. The service may return a valid empty buffer address even though this `KSRC` value is passed back.
- ▶ `RC_PIPE_EMPTY` if the specified pipe does not have an available empty buffer. The service may return this code after successfully putting the full buffer into the pipe but not finding an available empty buffer. This code is redundant because the service would also return the null pointer for the empty buffer. It is provided for completeness.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_PIPE` if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_PIPE` if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 4-12 on page 134, the `threadA` producer thread has environment arguments in the `myenvargs` structure and the elements of the structure have been previously defined. The `buffer` element represents the address of the next buffer to fill and is initialized with a pointer to an empty buffer in `PIPEA`. The `maxbufsize` variable contains the maximum useful size of a buffer in `PIPEA`. When `threadA` executes, it receives the pointer to its environment arguments and uses the elements therein to preserve variables it needs to maintain between execution cycles, principally

the `buffer` variable. When in operation, it fills the empty buffer in a loop until the buffer reaches the maximum useful size. The thread then jams the full buffer to the front of the pipe, simultaneously getting the next available empty buffer in the pipe. The empty buffer is stored in the environment argument `buffer` element to get ready for the next execution cycle of `threadA`. The example assumes that the `KSRC` value returned by the service is always `RC_GOOD`.

**Example 4-12. Perform Fast Buffer Exchange at Front of Pipe**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kpipe.h"            /* PIPEA */

/* environment argument structure for threadA */
struct myenvargs
{
    char *buffer;
    int maxbufsize;
}

void threadA ((void *)0, (struct myenvargs *)myargs)
{
    int bufsize;
    KSRC ksrc;

    for (bufsize=0; bufsize <= myargs->maxbufsize; bufsize++)
    {
        ...fill the buffer
    }

    /* jam full buffer in front of pipe and get next empty buffer */
    myargs->buffer = TS_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf (PIPEA,
                                                myargs->buffer, bufsize, &ksrc);
}
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_GetEmptyPipeBuf, page 120  
XX\_GetFullPipeBuf, page 122  
XX\_JamFullPipeBuf, page 136  
XX\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf, page 144  
XX\_PutEmptyPipeBuf, page 147  
XX\_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, page 149  
XX\_PutFullPipeBuf, page 152



# XX\_JamFullPipeBuf

Put a full buffer at the front of a pipe.

## Zones

<b>1</b>	IS_JamFullPipeBuf
<b>2</b>	TS_JamFullPipeBuf
<b>3</b>	KS_JamFullPipeBuf

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_JamFullPipeBuf (PIPE pipe, void * pbuf,  
                        int bufsize)
```

## Inputs

<i>pipe</i>	The handle of the pipe to use.
<i>pbuf</i>	The pointer to the full buffer to be put at the front of the specified <i>pipe</i> .
<i>bufsize</i>	The actual size of the buffer as filled. This number must be less than or equal to the maximum usable buffer size for the specified <i>pipe</i> .

## Description

The XX\_JamFullPipeBuf kernel service allows the specified *pipe*'s producer to put a full buffer into *pipe* at its head rather than at the tail as is the normal case.

It is necessary for the producer to state the size of the buffer as filled so that *pipe*'s consumer knows how much data there is to process. The size of the filled buffer must be less than or equal to the maximum usable size of the buffers for *pipe*.

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service was successful.
- ▶ RC\_PIPE\_FULL if the specified pipe does not have room for another full buffer.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_PIPE if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_PIPE if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.

- ▶ `FE_NULL_PIPEBUFFER` if the specified Pipe buffer address is null.
- ▶ `FE_ZERO_PIPEBUFSIZE` if the buffer size in the specified pipe is zero.

## Example

In Example 4-13, the Current Thread fills a buffer with data and jams this buffer in front of the pipe specified in `PIPEA`.

### Example 4-13. Put Full Buffer at Front of Pipe

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kpipe.h"           /* PIPEA */

int bufsize;
char *fullbuf;

... fill the buffer, fullbuf

/* jam full buffer in front of pipe */
TS_JamFullPipeBuf (PIPEA, fullbuf, bufsize);

... continue
```

---

## See Also

`XX_DefPipeAction`, page 112  
`XX_DefPipeProp`, page 115  
`XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf`, page 132  
`XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf`, page 144  
`XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf`, page 147  
`XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf`, page 149  
`XX_PutFullPipeBuf`, page 152

# KS\_LookupPipe

Look up a pipe by name to get its handle.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_LookupPipe (const char *pname, PIPE *ppipe)
```

## Inputs

*pname*      A pointer to the null-terminated name string for the pipe.

*ppipe*      A pointer to a variable in which to store the matching handle, if found.

## Description

The `KS_LookupPipe` service obtains the handle of a static or dynamic pipe whose name matches the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*. The lookup process terminates when it finds a match between the specified string and a static or dynamic pipe name or when it finds no match. The service searches dynamic names, if any, first. If a match is found, the service stores the matching pipe's handle in the variable pointed to by *ppipe*.



**Note:** To use this service on static pipes, you must enable the *Static Names* attribute of the Pipe class during system generation.

This service has no effect on the registration of the specified pipe by the Current Task.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of pipe names in use.

---

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the search succeeds. The service stores the handle of the pipe in the variable pointed to by *ppipe*.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the service finds no matching pipe name.



## Example

In Example 4-14, the Current Task needs to use the dynamic pipe specified in `DynPipe2`. If the pipe name is found, the example outputs the pipe handle to the console in a brief message.

### Example 4-14. Look Up Pipe by Name

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"         /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

PIPE dynpipe;
static char buf[128];

/* lookup the pipe name to see if it exists */
if (KS_LookupPipe ("DynPipe2", &dynpipe) != RC_GOOD)
{
    putline ("Pipe DynPipe2 name not found");
}
else /* pipe exists */
{
    sprintf (buf, "DynPipe2 is pipe %d", dynpipe);
    putline (buf);
}
```

---

## See Also

`KS_DefPipeName`, page 118  
`KS_GetPipeName`, page 128

# KS\_OpenPipe

Allocate and name a dynamic pipe.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_OpenPipe (const char *pname, PIPE *ppipe)
```

## Inputs

*pname*      A pointer to the null-terminated name string for the pipe.

*ppipe*      A pointer to a variable in which to store the handle of the allocated pipe.

## Description

The `KS_OpenPipe` kernel service allocates, names, and obtains the handle of a dynamic pipe. If a dynamic pipe is available and there is no existing pipe, static or dynamic, with a name matching the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*, the service allocates a dynamic pipe and applies the name referenced by *pname* to the new pipe. The service stores the handle of the new dynamic pipe in the variable pointed to by *ppipe*. The kernel stores only the address of the name internally, which means that the same array cannot be used to build multiple dynamic pipe names.

If *pname* is a null pointer (`(char *)0`), the service does not assign a name to the dynamic pipe. However, if *pname* points to a null string (`""`), the name is legal as long as no other pipe is already using a null string as its name.

If the service finds an existing pipe with a matching name, it does not open a new pipe and returns a value indicating an unsuccessful operation.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Pipe class during system generation.

If the pointer to the pipe name is not null, the time required to perform this operation varies with the number of pipe names in use.

If the pointer to the pipe name is null, no search of pipe names takes place and the time to perform the service is fixed. You can define the pipe name at a later time with a call to the `KS_DefPipeName` service.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully. The service stores the handle of the new dynamic pipe in the variable pointed to by *ppipe*.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_ALREADY_EXISTS` if the name search finds another pipe whose name matches the specified string.
- ▶ `RC_NO_OBJECT_AVAILABLE` if the name search finds no match but all dynamic pipes are in use.

## Example

Example 4-15 allocates a dynamic pipe and names it `DynPipe2`.

### Example 4-15. Allocate Dynamic Pipe

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

KSRC ksrc;
PIPE dynpipe;

if ((ksrc = KS_OpenPipe ("DynPipe2", &dynpipe)) != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_OBJECT_ALREADY_EXISTS)
        putline ("DynPipe2 pipe name in use");
    else if (ksrc == RC_NO_OBJECT_AVAILABLE)
        putline ("No dynamic pipes available");
    else
        putline ("Pipes are not a defined class");
}
else
{
    ... pipe was opened correctly. Okay to define its properties now
}
```

---

## See Also

`KS_ClosePipe`, page 110  
`KS_UsePipe`, page 154

# INIT\_PipeClassProp

Initialize the Pipe object class properties.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC INIT_PipeClassProp
(const KCLASSPROP *pclassprop)
```

## Input

*pclassprop*     A pointer to a Pipe object class properties structure.

## Description

During the **RTXC** Kernel initialization procedure (usually performed in Zone 3), you must define the kernel objects needed by the **RTXC** Kernel to perform the application. The `INIT_PipeClassProp` kernel service allocates space for the Pipe object class in system RAM. The amount of RAM to allocate, and all other properties of the class, are specified in the structure pointed to by *pclassprop*.

The `KCLASSPROP` structure has the following organization:

---

```
typedef struct
{
    KATTR attributes;
    KOBJECT n_statics;           /* number of static objects */
    KOBJECT n_dynamics;         /* number of dynamic objects */
    short objsize;               /* used for calculating offsets */
    short totalsize;             /* used to alloc object array RAM */
    ksize_t namelen;             /* length of the name string */
    const char *pstaticnames;
} KCLASSPROP;
```

---

The `attributes` element of the Pipe property structure supports the attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 4-1 on page 127.

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ `RC_NO_RAM` if the initialization fails because there is insufficient system RAM available.

## Example

During system initialization, the startup code must initialize the Pipe object class before using any kernel service for that class, regardless of Zone. In Example 4-16 on page 143, the system

generation process produced a KCLASSPROP structure containing the information about the kernel class necessary for its initialization. That structure is referenced externally to the code. The example outputs any error messages to the console.

#### **Example 4-16. Initialize Pipe Object Class**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

extern const SYSPROP sysprop;
extern const KCLASSPROP pipeclassprop;

KSRC userinit (void)
{
    KSRC ksrc;
    static char buf[128];

    /* initialize the kernel workspace, allocate RAM for
       required classes, etc. */

    if ((ksrc = INIT_SysProp (&sysprop)) != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("Kernel initialization failure");
        return (ksrc); /* end initialization process */
    }
    /* kernel is initialized */

    /* Need to initialize the necessary kernel object classes */

    /* Initialize the Pipe Kernel Object class */
    if ((ksrc = INIT_PipeClassProp (&pipeclassprop)) != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("Insufficient RAM for Pipe init.");
        return (ksrc); /* end initialization process */
    }

    ... Continue with system initialization
}
```

---

#### **See Also**

KS\_GetPipeClassProp, page 126

# XX\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf

Put an empty buffer into a pipe and then get a full buffer from the same pipe.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf
- 2** TS\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf
- 3** KS\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf

## Synopsis

```
void * XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf (PIPE pipe,  
    void * pbuf, int *pbufsize, KSRC *pksrc)
```

## Inputs

<i>pipe</i>	The handle of the pipe to use.
<i>pbuf</i>	The pointer to the empty buffer being returned to the specified <i>pipe</i> .
<i>pbufsize</i>	A pointer to a variable that will, upon completion of the service, contain the actual size of the full buffer, the pointer to which is being returned as the value of the function.
<i>pksrc</i>	A pointer to KSRC type return code.

## Description

The XX\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf kernel service allows the specified *pipe*'s consumer to return an empty buffer to *pipe* and, at the same time, get the next available full buffer from *pipe*, returning the pointer to the full buffer to the caller.

It is necessary for the consumer to obtain the size of the buffer as filled by *pipe*'s producer so that the consumer knows how much data there is to process. It is the producer's responsibility to ensure that the size of the filled buffer is less than or equal to the maximum usable size of the buffers for *pipe*.

It is permissible to define *pbuf* as a null pointer ((void \*)0) to indicate there is no empty buffer to return into the pipe. If *pbuf* is null, the service ignores the pointer and functions identically to the XX\_GetFullPipeBuf kernel service, returning the pointer to the next available full buffer. This technique may be useful when operating a loop in a consumer that uses the combination pipe operation. The first time through the loop, there is no empty buffer

to release but the service gets a full buffer, returning its address to allow the consumer to begin operation.

## Output

This service returns the pointer to the next available full buffer in *pipe* if the service is successful. If not, it returns a null pointer ((void \*)0).

The service also returns a `KSRC` type value through the *pksrc* pointer indicating how the service performed. The possible values are:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service was successful.
- ▶ `RC_PIPE_FULL` if the specified pipe does not have room for another full buffer. The service may return a valid empty buffer address even though this `KSRC` value is passed back.
- ▶ `RC_PIPE_EMPTY` if the specified pipe does not have an available empty buffer. The service may return this code after successfully putting the full buffer into the pipe but not finding an available empty buffer. This code is redundant because the service would also return the null pointer for the empty buffer. It is provided for completeness.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_PIPE` if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_PIPE` if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ `FE_NULL_PIPEPBUFSIZE` if the pointer to the buffer size is null.

## Example

In Example 4-17 on page 146, the `threadA` thread is a pipe consumer having environment arguments in the `myenvargs` structure. The elements of the structure have been previously defined. The `buffer` element represents the address of the empty buffer to release and is initialized with a null pointer. The `maxbufsize` variable contains the maximum useful size of a buffer in `PIPEA`. When `threadA` executes, it receives the pointer to its environment arguments and uses the elements therein to preserve needed values between execution cycles, principally `buffer`. When in operation, it releases the buffer, presumed empty, to the pipe and

simultaneously gets the address of the next available full buffer and the buffer's size. Having a full buffer, it processes the data in the buffer in a loop until the buffer is empty. The pointer to the now-empty buffer is stored in the environment argument `buffer` element to be ready for the next execution cycle of `threadA`. The example assumes that the `KSRC` value returned by the service is always `RC_GOOD`.

#### **Example 4-17.** Perform Consumer Fast Buffer Exchange on Pipe

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kpipe.h"            /* PIPEA */

/* environment argument structure for threadA */
struct myenvargs
{
    char *buffer;
    int maxbufsize;
}

void threadA ((void *)0, (struct myenvargs *)myargs)
{
    int bufsize, i;
    KSRC ksrc;

    /* put empty buffer into pipe and get next full buffer */
    myargs->buffer = TS_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf (PIPEA,
                                                myargs->buffer, &bufsize, &ksrc);

    for (i=0; i<= bufsize; i++)
    {
        ...process the data in the buffer
    }
}
```

---

#### **See Also**

XX\_DefPipeProp, page 115  
XX\_GetPipeProp, page 130  
XX\_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, page 132  
XX\_JamFullPipeBuf, page 136  
XX\_PutEmptyPipeBuf, page 147  
XX\_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, page 149  
XX\_PutFullPipeBuf, page 152



# XX\_PutEmptyPipeBuf

Return an empty buffer to a pipe.

## Zones

- |          |                    |
|----------|--------------------|
| <b>1</b> | IS_PutEmptyPipeBuf |
| <b>2</b> | TS_PutEmptyPipeBuf |
| <b>3</b> | KS_PutEmptyPipeBuf |

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf (PIPE pipe, void * pbuf)
```

## Inputs

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| <i>pipe</i> | The handle of the pipe to use.                              |
| <i>pbuf</i> | The pointer to the empty buffer to be returned to the pipe. |

## Description

The `XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf` kernel service allows the specified *pipe*'s consumer to return an empty buffer to *pipe*. The address of the empty buffer is then available for future use by the pipe's producer.

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service was successful.
- ▶ `RC_PIPE_FULL` if the specified pipe does not have room for another empty buffer.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_PIPE` if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_PIPE` if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ `FE_NULL_PIPEBUFFER` if the specified Pipe buffer address is null.

## Example

In Example 4-18 on page 148, the Current Thread gets a full buffer, empties it and returns the buffer to the pipe specified in `PIPEA`.

### Example 4-18. Return Empty Buffer to Pipe

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kpipe.h"            /* PIPEA */

int buffersize, i;
char *buffer;

/* first get a full buffer from PIPEA */
buffer = TS_GetFullPipeBuf (PIPEA, &buffersize);

for (i=0; i<=buffersize; i++)
{
    ... Process the data in the buffer

/* release empty buffer to pipe */
TS_PutEmptyPipeBuf (PIPEA, buffer);

... continue
```

---

### See Also

- XX\_DefPipeProp, page 115
- XX\_GetPipeProp, page 130
- XX\_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, page 132
- XX\_JamFullPipeBuf, page 136
- XX\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf, page 144
- XX\_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, page 149
- XX\_PutFullPipeBuf, page 152

# XX\_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf

Put a full buffer into a pipe and then get an empty buffer from the same pipe.

## Zones

<b>1</b>	IS_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf
<b>2</b>	TS_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf
<b>3</b>	KS_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf

## Synopsis

```
void * XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf (PIPE pipe,  
    void *pbuf, int bufsize, KSRC *pksrc)
```

## Inputs

<i>pipe</i>	The handle of the pipe to use.
<i>pbuf</i>	The pointer to the full buffer to be put into the specified <i>pipe</i> . A null pointer is valid.
<i>bufsize</i>	The actual size of the buffer as filled. This number must be less than or equal to the maximum usable buffer size for the specified <i>pipe</i> . If <i>pbuf</i> is a null pointer, the service ignores <i>bufsize</i> .
<i>pksrc</i>	A pointer to KSRC type return code.

## Description

The `XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf` kernel service allows the specified *pipe*'s producer to put a full buffer into *pipe* and at the same time, get the next available empty buffer from *pipe*, returning the pointer to the empty buffer to the caller.

It is necessary for the producer to state the size of the buffer as filled so that *pipe*'s consumer knows how much data there is to process. The size of the filled buffer must be less than or equal to the maximum usable size of the buffers for *pipe*.

It is permissible to define *pbuf* as a null pointer (`((void *)0)`) to indicate there is no full buffer to put into the pipe. If *pbuf* is null, the service ignores it and operates identically to the `XX_GetEmptyPipeBuf` service, returning the pointer to the next available empty buffer. This technique may be useful when employing a loop in a producer that uses the combination pipe operation. The first time through the loop, there is no full buffer but

the service allocates an empty buffer allowing the producer to begin operation.

If *pbuf* is a null pointer, the service ignores the value of *bufsize*. Ideally, in this situation, *bufsize* would contain a value of zero (0).

## Output

This service returns the pointer to the next available empty buffer if the service is successful. If not, it returns a null pointer ((void \*)0).

The service also returns a `KSRC` type value through the *pksrc* pointer indicating how the service performed. The possible values are:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service was successful.
- ▶ `RC_PIPE_FULL` if the specified pipe does not have room for another full buffer. The service may return a valid empty buffer address even though this `KSRC` value is passed back.
- ▶ `RC_PIPE_EMPTY` if the specified pipe does not have an available empty buffer. The service may return this code after successfully putting the full buffer into the pipe but not finding an available empty buffer. This code is redundant because the service would also return the null pointer for the empty buffer. It is provided for completeness.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_PIPE` if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_PIPE` if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 4-19 on page 151, the `threadA` pipe producer thread has environment arguments in the `myenvargs` structure and the elements of the structure have been previously defined. The `buffer` element represents the address of the next empty buffer to process and is initialized with a valid pointer to an empty buffer in `PIPEA`, and `maxbufsize` contains the maximum useful size of a buffer in `PIPEA`. When `threadA` executes, it receives the pointer to its environment argument structure and uses the elements therein to preserve needed variables between execution cycles, principally the `buffer` variable. When in operation, it fills the buffer in a loop until

the buffer reaches the maximum useful size. The thread then puts the full buffer into the pipe at its tail, simultaneously getting the next available empty buffer in the pipe. The address of the next empty buffer is stored in the environment argument `buffer` element to be ready for the next execution cycle of `threadA`. The example assumes that the `KSRC` value returned by the service is always `RC_GOOD`.

#### Example 4-19. Perform Fast Producer Buffer Exchange on Pipe

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kpipe.h"            /* PIPEA */

/* environment argument structure for threadA */
struct myenvargs
{
    char *buffer;
    int maxbufsize;
}

void threadA ((void *)0, (struct myenvargs *)myargs)
{
    int bufsize;
    KSRC ksrc;

    for (bufsize=0; bufsize<=myargs->maxbufsize; bufsize++)
    {
        ...fill the buffer
    }

    /* put full buffer at tail of pipe and get next empty buffer */
    myargs->buffer = TS_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf (PIPEA,
                                                myargs->buffer, bufsize, &ksrc);
}
```

---

#### See Also

XX\_DefPipeProp, page 115  
XX\_GetPipeProp, page 130  
XX\_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf, page 132  
XX\_JamFullPipeBuf, page 136  
XX\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf, page 144  
XX\_PutEmptyPipeBuf, page 147  
XX\_PutFullPipeBuf, page 152

# XX\_PutFullPipeBuf

Put a full buffer into a pipe.

## Zones

- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| 1 | IS_PutFullPipeBuf |
| 2 | TS_PutFullPipeBuf |
| 3 | KS_PutFullPipeBuf |

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_PutFullPipeBuf (PIPE pipe, void * pbuf,  
                        int bufsize)
```

## Inputs

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <i>pipe</i>    | The handle of the pipe to use.  |
| <i>pbuf</i>    | The pointer to the full buffer to be put into the specified <i>pipe</i> . The pointer must not be null.   |
| <i>bufsize</i> | The actual size of the buffer as filled. This number must be less than or equal to the maximum usable buffer size for the specified <i>pipe</i> . |

## Description

The `XX_PutFullPipeBuf` kernel service allows the specified *pipe*'s producer to put a full buffer into *pipe* at its tail.

It is necessary for the producer to state the size of the buffer as filled so that *pipe*'s consumer knows how much data there is to process. The size of the filled buffer must be less than or equal to the maximum usable size of the buffers for *pipe*.

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service was successful.
- ▶ `RC_PIPE_FULL` if the specified pipe does not have room for another full buffer.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_PIPE` if the specified pipe ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_PIPE` if the specified pipe has not yet been initialized.

- ▶ `FE_NULL_PIPEBUFFER` if the specified Pipe buffer address is null.
- ▶ `FE_ZERO_PIPEBUFSIZE` if the buffer size in the specified pipe is zero.

## Example

In Example 4-20, the Current Thread fills a buffer and puts the buffer in the pipe specified in `PIPEA`.

### Example 4-20. Put Full Buffer into Pipe

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kpipe.h"            /* PIPEA */

int buffersize;
void *buffer;

/* get pointer to an empty buffer */
buffer = TS_GetEmptyPipeBuf (PIPEA);

... fill the buffer until its size = maxbufsize for the pipe

/* put full buffer back into pipe */
TS_PutFullPipeBuf (PIPEA, buffer, &buffersize);

... continue
```

---

## See Also

`XX_DefPipeProp`, page 115  
`XX_GetPipeProp`, page 130  
`XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf`, page 132  
`XX_JamFullPipeBuf`, page 136  
`XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf`, page 144  
`XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf`, page 147  
`XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf`, page 149

## KS\_UsePipe

Look up a dynamic pipe by name and mark it for use.

### Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_UsePipe (const char *pname, PIPE *ppipe)
```

### Inputs

*pname*      A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*ppipe*      A pointer to a variable in which to store the matching handle, if found.

### Description

The `KS_UsePipe` kernel service acquires the handle of a dynamic pipe by looking up the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* in the list of pipe names. If there is a match, the service registers the pipe for future use by the Current Task and stores the matching handle in the variable pointed to by *ppipe*. This procedure allows the Current Task to reference the dynamic pipe successfully in subsequent kernel service calls.



**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Pipe class during system generation.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of pipe names in use.

---

### Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the search and registration is successful. The service stores the matching handle in the variable pointed to by *ppipe*.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the specified name belongs to a static pipe.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the service finds no matching pipe name.

### Example

Example 4-21 on page 155 locates the `DynPipe3` dynamic pipe by name and obtains the pipe handle. It then outputs a message to the



console indicating the handle of the pipe if successful or an error message if unsuccessful.

**Example 4-21. Read Pipe Handle and Register It**

---

```
#include <stdio.h>          /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"        /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

PIPE dynpipe;
KSRC ksrc;
static char buf[128];

if ((ksrc = KS_UsePipe ("DynPipe3", &dynpipe)) != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_STATIC_OBJECT)
        putline ("Pipe DynPipe3 is a static pipe");
    else
        putline ("Pipe DynPipe3 not found");
}
else
{
    /* pipe was found and its handle is in dynpipe. */
    sprintf (buf, "DynPipe3 is pipe %d", dynpipe);
    putline (buf);
}
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_DefPipeName, page 118

KS\_GetPipeName, page 128



## In This Chapter

We describe the Event Source kernel services in detail. The Event Source services maintain and update accumulators to count the number of source events as well as to serve as the base for related Counters and Alarms.

<b>XX_ClearEventSourceAttr .....</b>	<b>158</b>
<b>KS_CloseEventSource .....</b>	<b>160</b>
<b>KS_DefEventSourceName .....</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>XX_DefEventSourceProp.....</b>	<b>164</b>
<b>INIT_EventSourceClassProp.....</b>	<b>167</b>
<b>XX_GetEventSourceAcc .....</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>KS_GetEventSourceClassProp.....</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>KS_GetEventSourceName .....</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>XX_GetEventSourceProp .....</b>	<b>175</b>
<b>KS_LookupEventSource .....</b>	<b>177</b>
<b>KS_OpenEventSource .....</b>	<b>179</b>
<b>XX_ProcessEventSourceTick.....</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>XX_SetEventSourceAcc .....</b>	<b>183</b>
<b>XX_SetEventSourceAttr.....</b>	<b>185</b>
<b>KS_UseEventSource.....</b>	<b>187</b>

# XX\_ClearEventSourceAttr

Clear one or more event source attributes.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_ClearEventSourceAttr
- 3** KS\_ClearEventSourceAttr

## Synopsis

```
void XX_ClearEventSourceAttr (EVNTSRC evntsrc,  
                             ATTRMASK amask)
```

## Input

- evntsrc*      The handle of the event source containing the attributes to be cleared.
- amask*        A mask value containing the bits to clear in the attribute property of the specified event source.

## Description

The `XX_ClearEventSourceAttr` kernel service clears bits in the attribute property of the event source specified in *evntsrc* according to the bits specified in *amask*.

The *attributes* element of an Event Source object supports the attribute and corresponding mask listed in Table 5-1 on page 164.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 5-1 on page 159, the Current Thread clears the disable bit in the event source specified in `EVNTSRC1` to enable further processing of Events.

**Example 5-1.** Clear Event Source Attribute

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"      /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "keventsrc.h"    /* EVNTSRC1 */

/* clear disable bit in event source to re-enable */
TS_ClearEventSourceAttr (EVNTSRC1, ATTR_ENVTSRC_DISABLE);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**            [XX\\_SetEventSourceAttr](#), page 185

# KS\_CloseEventSource

End the use of a dynamic event source.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_CloseEventSource (EVNTSRC evntsrc)
```

## Input

*evntsrc*      The handle for an event source.

## Description

The `KS_CloseEventSource` kernel service ends the Current Task's use of the dynamic event source specified in *evntsrc*. When closing *evntsrc*, the service detaches the caller's use of it. If the caller is the last user of *evntsrc*, the service releases *evntsrc* to the free pool of dynamic event sources for reuse. If there is at least one other task still using *evntsrc*, the service does not release *evntsrc* to the free pool but completes successfully.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Event Source class during system generation.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service is successful.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the specified event source is not dynamic.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_INUSE` if the specified event source does not correspond to an active dynamic event source.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_INUSE` if the Current Task's use of the specified event source is closed but the event source remains open for use by other tasks.



---

**Note:** `RC_OBJECT_INUSE` does not necessarily indicate an error condition. The calling task must interpret its meaning.

---

**Error**

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

FE\_ILLEGAL\_EVTNSRC if the specified event source ID is not valid.

**Example**

In Example 5-2, the Current Task waits on a signal from another task indicating that it is time to close the dynamic event source specified in *dynevnsrc*. When the Current Task receives the signal, it closes the associated event source.

**Example 5-2. Close Event Source**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

EVNTSRC dynevnsrc;
SEMA dynsema;

KS_TestSemaW (dynsema);      /* wait for signal */

KS_CloseEventSource (dynevnsrc); /* then close the event source */
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_OpenEventSource, page 179

KS\_UseEventSource, page 187

# KS\_DefEventSourceName

Define the name of a previously opened event source.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_DefEventSourceName (EVNTSRC evntsrc,  
                             const char *pname)
```

## Inputs

*evntsrc*      The handle of the event source being defined.

*pname*        A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

## Description

The `KS_DefEventSourceName` kernel service names or renames the dynamic event source specified in *evntsrc*. The service uses the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* for *evntsrc*'s new name.

Static event sources cannot be named or renamed under program control.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Event Source class during system generation.

This service does not check for duplicate event source names.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the event source being named is static.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the *Dynamics* attribute of the Event Source class is not enabled.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_INUSE` if the specified event source does not correspond to an active dynamic event source.

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

`FE_ILLEGAL_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source ID is not valid.



## Example

Example 5-3 assigns the name `NewEventSource` to the event source specified in `dynevntsrc` so other users may reference it by name.

### Example 5-3. Assign Event Source Name

---

```
#include <stdio.h>          /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"        /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

KSRC ksrc;
EVNTSRC dynevntsrc;

if ((ksrc = KS_DefEventSourceName (dynevntsrc, "NewEventSource"))
    != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND)
        putline ("Dynamic Event Sources are not enabled");
    else if (ksrc == RC_STATIC_OBJECT)
    {
        sprintf (buf, "Event Source %d is a static event source",
                  dynevntsrc);
        putline (buf);
    }
    else
    {
        sprintf (buf, "Event Source %d is not active.",
                  dynevntsrc);
        putline (buf);
    }
}

... naming operation was successful. Continue
```

---

## See Also

`KS_OpenEventSource`, page 179  
`KS_GetEventSourceName`, page 173  
`KS_LookupEventSource`, page 177  
`KS_UseEventSource`, page 187

# XX\_DefEventSourceProp

Define the event source’s properties.

## Zones

- 2
- TS\_DefEventSourceProp
- 3
- KS\_DefEventSourceProp

## Synopsis

```
void KS_DefEventSourceProp (EVNTSRC evntsrc,
                           const EVNTSRCPROP *pevntsrcprop)
```

## Inputs

- evntsrc*
- The handle of the event source being defined.
- pevntsrcprop*
- A pointer to an Event Source properties structure.

## Description

The `XX_DefEventSourceProp` kernel service defines the properties of the event source specified in *evntsrc* using the values contained in the `EVNTSRCPROP` structure pointed to by *pevntsrcprop*.

Example 5-4 shows the organization of the `EVNTSRCPROP` structure.

**Example 5-4.** Event Source Properties Structure

```
typedef struct
{
    KATTR attributes; /* Event Source attributes (DISABLE only) */
} EVNTSRCPROP;
```

The *attributes* element of an Event Source object supports the attribute and corresponding mask listed in Table 5-1.

**Table 5-1.** Event Source Attributes and Masks

Attribute	Mask
Disable	ATTR_DISABLE

Setting the *Disable* attribute disables processing of event source ticks with the `XX_ProcessEventSourceTick` service. Clearing the *Disable* attribute enables tick processing on the event source.



**Note:** Define an event source's properties only when the event source is not busy.

This kernel service is not intended to permit unrestricted enabling and disabling of an event source's *Disable* attribute. While no restrictions are placed on its frequency of use, you should use this service before the first use of the event source.

---

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

FE\_ILLEGAL\_EVTNSRC if the specified event source ID is not valid.

## Example

During system initialization, the startup routine must create and initialize the Event Source object class and define the properties of all the static event sources before the system can process the events associated with the sources, as illustrated in Example 5-5.

### Example 5-5. Define Event Source Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

extern const KCLASSPROP evntsrcclassprop;
extern const ENVSRCPROP evntsrcprop[];

KSRC ksrc;
int objnum;

/* initialize the Event Source class/object data */
if ((ksrc = INIT_EventSourceClassProp (&evntsrcclassprop))
    != RC_GOOD)
    return ksrc;

for (objnum = 1; objnum <= evntsrcclassprop.n_statics; objnum++)
{
    TS_DefEventSourceProp (objnum, &evntsrcprop[objnum]);
}

... continue
```

---

## See Also

XX\_GetEventSourceProp, page 175

INIT\_EventSourceClassProp, page 167

KS\_OpenEventSource, page 179

# INIT\_EventSourceClassProp

Initialize the Event Source object class properties.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC INIT_EventSourceClassProp
(const KCLASSPROP *pclassprop)
```

## Input

*pclassprop*     A pointer to a Event Source object class properties structure.

## Description

During the RTXC initialization procedure, you must define the kernel objects needed by the kernel to perform the application. The INIT\_EventSourceClassProp kernel service allocates space for the Event Source object class in system RAM. The amount of RAM to allocate, and all other properties of the class, are specified in the KCLASSPROP structure pointed to by *pclassprop*.

The KCLASSPROP structure has the following organization:

---

```
typedef struct
{
    KATTR attributes;
    KOBJECT n_statics;           /* number of static objects */
    KOBJECT n_dynamics;         /* number of dynamic objects */
    short objsize;              /* used for calculating offsets */
    short totalsize;            /* used to alloc object array RAM */
    ksize_t namelen;            /* length of the name string */
    const char *pstaticnames;
} KCLASSPROP;
```

---

The attributes element of the Event Source KCLASSPROP structure supports the class property attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 5-2 on page 171.

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ RC\_NO\_RAM if the initialization fails because there is insufficient system RAM available.

## Example

During system initialization, the startup code must initialize the Event Source object class before using any kernel service for that class. The system generation process produces a KCLASSPROP structure containing the information about the kernel object necessary for its initialization. In Example 5-6, that structure is referenced externally to the code module.

### Example 5-6. Initialize Event Source Object Class Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

extern const SYSPROP sysprop;
extern const KCLASSPROP evnsrcclassprop;

KSRC userinit (void)
{
    KSRC ksrc;

    /* Initialize the kernel workspace and allocate RAM */
    /* for required classes, etc. */
    if ((ksrc = INIT_SysProp (&sysprop)) != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("Kernel initialization failure");
        return (ksrc); /* end initialization process */
    }

    /* Initialize the necessary kernel object classes */

    /* Initialize the Event Source kernel object class */
    if ((ksrc = INIT_EventSourceClassProp (&evnsrcclassprop))
        != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("No RAM for Event Source init");
        return (ksrc); /* end initialization process */
    }

    ... Continue with system initialization
}
```

---

## See Also

KS\_GetEventSourceClassProp

# XX\_GetEventSourceAcc

Get the event sources's accumulator.

## Zones

- |          |                      |
|----------|----------------------|
| <b>1</b> | IS_GetEventSourceAcc |
| <b>2</b> | TS_GetEventSourceAcc |
| <b>3</b> | KS_GetEventSourceAcc |

## Synopsis

```
TICKS KS_GetEventSourceAcc (EVNTSRC evntsrc)
```

## Input

*evntsrc*      The handle of the event source to be read.

## Description

The `XX_GetEventSourceAcc` kernel service reads the event accumulator of the event source specified in *evntsrc* and returns the value read to the caller.

## Output

This service returns the event accumulator of the specified event source to a variable of type `TICKS`.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 5-7 on page 170, the Current Thread needs to know how many ticks have occurred on the event source specified in `EVNTSRC1`.

### Example 5-7. Read Event Source Accumulator

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kevntsrc.h"         /* EVNTSRC1 */

TICKS currticks;

/* get current tick count on EVNTSRC1 */
currticks = TS_GetEventSourceAcc (EVNTSRC1);

... do something with currticks from EVNTSRC1

... continue
```

---

### See Also

[XX\\_ProcessEventSourceTick](#), page 181



# KS\_GetEventSourceClassProp

Get the Event Source object class properties.

## Synopsis

```
const KCLASSPROP * KS_GetEventSourceClassProp
(int *pint)
```

## Input

*pint*      A pointer to a variable in which to store the number of available dynamic event sources. The value of *pint* may be null ((int \*)0), in which case the service does not return the number of dynamic event sources.

## Description

The KS\_GetEventSourceClassProp kernel service obtains a pointer to the KCLASSPROP structure that was used during system initialization by the INIT\_EventSourceClassProp service to initialize the Event Source object class properties. If *pint* is not null ((int \*)0), the service returns the number of available dynamic event sources in the variable pointed to by *pint*. If *pint* is null, the service does not return the number of dynamic event sources.

Table 2-13 on page 44 shows the organization of the KCLASSPROP structure.

The value of the *attributes* element of the Event Source KCLASSPROP structure is determined by the selections you make during the system configuration procedure. It supports the class property attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 5-2.

**Table 5-2.** Event Source Class Attributes and Masks

Attribute	Mask
Static Names	ATTR_STATIC_NAMES
Dynamics	ATTR_DYNAMICS

## Output

If successful, this service returns a pointer to a KCLASSPROP structure.

If the Event Source class is not initialized, the service returns a null pointer ((KCLASSPROP \*)0).

If *pint* is not null, the service returns the number of available dynamic event sources, provided that the *Dynamics* attribute is enabled (Set). If the Dynamics attribute is disabled (Clear), the service stores a value of zero (0) in the variable pointed to by *pint*.

## Example

In Example 5-8, the Current Task accesses the information contained in the KCLASSPROP structure for the Event Source class.

### Example 5-8. Read Event Source Object Class Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

KCLASSPROP *pevntsrcclassprop;
int free_dyn;

/* Get the event source kernel object class properties */
if ((pevntsrcclassprop = KS_GetEventSourceClassProp (&free_dyn))
    == (KCLASSPROP *)0)
{
    putline ("Event Source Class not initialized");
}
else
{
    ... event source object class properties are available for use
    "free_dyn" is the number of available dynamic event sources
}
```

---

## See Also

INIT\_EventSourceClassProp, page 167

# KS\_GetEventSourceName

Get the event source's name.

## Synopsis

```
char * KS_GetEventSourceName (EVNTSRC evntsrc)
```

## Input

*evntsrc*      The handle of the event source being queried.

## Description

The `KS_GetEventSourceName` kernel service obtains a pointer to the null-terminated string containing the name of the event source specified in *evntsrc*. The event source may be static or dynamic.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must select the *Dynamics* option for the Event Source class during system generation.

To use this service on static event sources, you must select the *Static Names* option for the Event Source class during system generation.

---

## Output

If *evntsrc* has a name, this service returns a pointer to the null-terminated name string.

If *evntsrc* has no name, the service returns a null pointer `((char *)0)`.

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

`FE_ILLEGAL_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source ID is not valid.

## Example

In Example 5-9 on page 174, the Current Task reports the name of the dynamic event source specified in `dynevtsrc`.

### Example 5-9. Read Event Source Name

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"         /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

static char buf[128];

EVNTSRC dynevnsrc;
char *pname;

if ((pname = KS_GetEventSourceName (dynevnsrc)) == (char *)0)
    sprintf (buf, "Event Source %d has no name", dynevnsrc);
else
    sprintf (buf, "Event Source %d name is %s", dynevnsrc, pname);

putline (buf); /* send buffer to console */
```

---

### See Also

KS\_DefEventSourceName, page 162

KS\_OpenEventSource, page 179

# XX\_GetEventSourceProp

Get the event source's properties.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetEventSourceProp
- 3** KS\_GetEventSourceProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_GetEventSourceProp (EVNTSRC evntsrc,  
                           EVNTSRCPROP *pevntsrcprop)
```

## Inputs

- evntsrc*                      The handle of the event source being queried.
- pevntsrcprop*                A pointer to an Event Source properties structure.

## Description

The `XX_GetEventSourceProp` kernel service obtains all of the property values of the event source specified in *evntsrc* in a single call. The service stores the property values in the `EVNTSRCPROP` structure pointed to by *pevntsrcprop*.

Example 5-4 on page 164 shows the organization of the `EVNTSRCPROP` structure.

The *attributes* element of an Event Source object supports the attribute and corresponding mask listed in Table 5-1 on page 164.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 5-10 on page 176, the Current Thread needs to know the status of the disable bit in the attributes of the event source specified in `EVNTSRC1`.

### Example 5-10. Read Event Source Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kevntsrc.h"         /* EVNTSRC1 */

EVNTSRCPROP  evntsrcprop;

/* get current Event Source Properties */
TS_GetEventSourceProp (EVNTSRC1, &evntsrcprop);

/* is event source disable? */
if (evntsrcprop.attributes && ATTR_DISABLE)
{
    ... do something, Event Source is disabled
}

... continue
```

---

### See Also

XX\_DefEventSourceProp, page 164

# KS\_LookupEventSource

Look up an event source by its name to get its handle.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_LookupEventSource (const char *pname,  
                           EVNTSRC *pevntsrc)
```

## Inputs

*pname*      A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*pevntsrc*    A pointer to a variable in which to store the event source handle.

## Description

The `KS_LookupEventSource` kernel service obtains the handle of the static or dynamic event source whose name matches the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*. The lookup process terminates when it finds a match between the specified string and a static or dynamic event source name or when it finds no match. The service stores the handle of the matching event source in the variable pointed to by *pevntsrc*. The service searches dynamic names, if any, first.



---

**Note:** To use this service on static event sources, you must enable the *Static Names* attribute of the Event Source class during system generation.

This service has no effect on the registration of the specified event source by the Current Task.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of event source names in use.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the search succeeds. The service also stores the handle of the matching event source in the variable pointed to by *pevntsrc*.

- ▶ RC\_OBJECT\_NOT\_FOUND if the service finds no matching event source name.

## Example

In Example 5-11, the Current Task needs to use the dynamic event source named Chnl2EventSource. If the event source is found, the Current Task reads its accumulator.

### Example 5-11. Look Up Event Source by Name

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

EVNTSRC dynevntsrc;
TICKS chnl2evnts;
KSRC ksrc;

/* lookup the event source name to see if it exists */
if (KS_LookupEventSource ("Chnl2EventSource", &dynevntsrc)
    != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... Event Source name not found. Deal with it
}
else /* event source exists */
{
    /* get the event source's accumulator */
    chnl2evnts = KS_GetEventSourceAcc (dynevntsrc);

    ...OK to use accumulator for "Chnl2EventSource" now
}
```

---

## See Also

KS\_DefEventSourceName, page 162  
KS\_GetEventSourceName, page 173  
KS\_OpenEventSource, page 179



# KS\_OpenEventSource

Allocate and name a dynamic event source.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_OpenEventSource (const char *pname,  
                          EVNTSRC *pevntsrc)
```

## Inputs

*pname*      A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*pevntsrc*    A pointer to a variable in which to store the event source handle.

## Description

The `KS_OpenEventSource` kernel service allocates, names, and obtains the handle of a dynamic event source. If a dynamic event source is available and there is no existing event source, static or dynamic, with a name matching the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*, the service allocates a dynamic event source and applies the name referenced by *pname* to the new event source. The service stores the handle of the new dynamic event source in the variable pointed to by *pevntsrc*. The kernel stores only the address of the name internally, which means that the same array cannot be used to build multiple dynamic event source names.

If *pname* is null (`(char *)0`), the service does not assign a name to the dynamic event source. However, if *pname* points to a null string (`" "`), the name is legal as long as no other event source is already using a null string as its name.

If the service finds an existing event source with a matching name, it does not open a new event source and returns a value indicating an unsuccessful operation.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Event Source class during system generation.

If the pointer to the event source name is not null (`(char *)0`), the time required to perform this operation varies with the number of event source names in use.

If *pname* is null, no search of event source names takes place and the time to perform the service is fixed. You can define the event source name at a later time with a call to the `KS_DefEventSourceName` service.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully. The service also stores the handle of the allocated event source in the variable pointed to by *pevntsrc*.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_ALREADY_EXISTS` if the name search finds another event source whose name matches the specified string.
- ▶ `RC_NO_OBJECT_AVAILABLE` if the name search finds no match but all dynamic event sources are in use.

## Example

Example 5-12 allocates a dynamic event source and names it `Chnl2EventSource`. If the name is already being used, the example outputs a message on the console.

### Example 5-12. Allocate and Name Event Source

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

KSRC ksrc;
EVNTSRC dynevntsrc;

if ((ksrc = KS_OpenEventSource ("Chnl2EventSource", &dynevntsrc))
    != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_OBJECT_ALREADY_EXISTS)
        putline ("Chnl2EventSource event source name in use");
    else if (ksrc == RC_NO_OBJECT_AVAILABLE)
        putline ("No dynamic event sources available");
    else
        putline ("Event Sources object class not defined");
}
... event source was opened correctly. Okay to use it now
```

---

## See Also

`KS_CloseEventSource`, page 160  
`KS_LookupEventSource`, page 177  
`KS_UseEventSource`, page 187

# XX\_ProcessEventSourceTick

Process a tick on an event source.

## Zones

- 1** IS\_ProcessEventSourceTick
- 2** TS\_ProcessEventSourceTick
- 3** KS\_ProcessEventSourceTick

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_ProcessEventSourceTick (EVNTSRC evntsrc,  
                                TICKS nevnts)
```

## Inputs

- evntsrc*      The handle of the event source being updated with a new tick (or ticks).
- nevnts*      The number of ticks to process for the specified event source.

## Description

Provided the `ATTR_DISABLED` attribute is cleared in the *attributes* property of the event source specified in *evntsrc*, the `XX_ProcessEventSourceTick` kernel service performs all of the **RTXC** Kernel-dependent functions necessary when an event source tick occurs, including updating of all counters associated with *evntsrc* and all alarms associated with those counters. The source of the tick may be external or an internal. The service may process more than one tick per call, as specified in *nevnts*.

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if no alarm expiration occurred as a result of the event source tick.
- ▶ `RC_ALARM_EXPIRED` if an alarm expires on a counter associated with the specified event source as a result of the call to `XX_ProcessEventSourceTick`.
- ▶ `RC_EVNTSRC_DISABLED` if the specified event source has been disabled.

## Example

In Example 5-13 on page 182, for diagnostic purposes, a clock interrupt service routine is tracking how many alarm expirations occur as a result of processing ticks from the `TIMEBASE` event

source. The `ticks` variable specifies the number of ticks to process. The interrupt service routine uses a second event source, named `ALARMEXPS`, to accumulate the number of alarm expiration notifications it receives as a result of processing event source ticks on `TIMEBASE`.

**Example 5-13.** Process Source Event for Clock Tick

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "eventsrc.h"         /* defines ALARMEXPS */

Global TICKS ticks;

/* start of the interrupt service routine device handler */

...got a clock interrupt and have number of ticks
   to process in "ticks"

if (IS_ProcessEventSourceTick (TIMEBASE, ticks)
    == RC_ALARM_EXPIRED)
    IS_ProcessEventSourceTick (ALARMEXPS, (TICKS)1);

... continue
```

---

# XX\_SetEventSourceAcc

Set the event source's accumulator to a specified value.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_SetEventSourceAcc
- 3** KS\_SetEventSourceAcc

## Synopsis

```
void XX_SetEventSourceAcc (EVNTSRC evntsrc,  
                           TICKS ticks)
```

## Inputs

- evntsrc*      The handle of the event source to be updated.
- ticks*        The value to store in the accumulator of the event source.

## Description

The `XX_SetEventSourceAcc` kernel service sets the event accumulator of the event source specified in *evntsrc* to the value specified in *ticks*.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 5-14 on page 184, the Current Thread needs to set the accumulator in the event source specified in `EVNTSRC1` to zero.

### Example 5-14. Set Event Source Accumulator

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kevntsrc.h"         /* EVNTSRC1 */

/* set event source accumulator */
TS_SetEventSourceAcc (EVNTSRC1, (TICKS)0);

... continue
```

---

### See Also

XX\_GetEventSourceAcc, page 169

XX\_ProcessEventSourceTick, page 181

# XX\_SetEventSourceAttr

Set one or more event source attributes.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_SetEventSourceAttr
- 3** KS\_SetEventSourceAttr

## Synopsis

```
void XX_SetEventSourceAttr (EVNTSRC evntsrc,  
                             ATTRMASK amask)
```

## Inputs

- evntsrc*      The handle of the event source containing the attributes to be set.
- amask*        A mask value containing the bits to set in the *attribute* property of the event source specified in *evntsrc*.

## Description

The `XX_SetEventSourceAttr` kernel service sets bits in the attribute property of the event source specified in *evntsrc* according to the bits specified in *amask*.

The *attributes* element of an Event Source object supports the attribute and corresponding mask listed in Table 5-1 on page 164.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_EVNTSRC` if the specified event source has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 5-15 on page 186, the Current Thread needs to disable the event source specified in `EVNTSRC1` to prevent further processing of events for that event source.

### Example 5-15. Set Event Source Attribute Bits

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kevntsrc.h"         /* EVNTSRC1 */

/* disable EVNTSRC1 */
TS_SetEventSourceAttr (EVNTSRC1, ATTR_EVNTSRC_DISABLE);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**                      [XX\\_ClearEventSourceAttr](#), page 158



# KS\_UseEventSource

Look up a dynamic event source by name and mark it for use.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_UseEventSource (const char *pname,  
                        EVNTSRC *pevntsrc)
```

## Inputs

*pname*      A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*pevntsrc*    A pointer to a variable in which to store the event source handle.

## Description

The `KS_UseEventSource` kernel service acquires the handle of a dynamic event source by looking up the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* in the list of event source names. If there is a match, the service registers the event source for future use by the Current Task and stores the handle of the matching event source in the variable pointed to by *pevntsrc*. This procedure allows the Current Task to reference the dynamic event source successfully in subsequent kernel service calls.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Event Source class during system generation.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of event source names in use.

---

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the search is successful. The service also stores the handle of the matching event source in the variable pointed to by *pevntsrc*.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the specified name belongs to a static event source.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the service finds no matching event source name.

## Example

Example 5-16 locates a dynamic event source named `DynMuxEventSource3` and obtains its handle for subsequent use.

### Example 5-16. Read Event Source Handle and Register It

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"           /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

KSRC ksrc;
EVNTSRC dynevntsrc;

if ((ksrc = KS_UseEventSource ("DynMuxEventSource3", &dynevntsrc))
    != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_STATIC_OBJECT)
        putline ("DynMuxEventSource3 is a static event source");
    else
        putline ("Event Source DynMuxEventSource3 name not found");
}

... event source was found and its handle is in dynevntsrc.
    Okay to use it now
```

---

## See Also

`XX_DefEventSourceProp`, page 164  
`XX_ClearEventSourceAttr`, page 158  
`KS_OpenEventSource`, page 179

## In This Chapter

We describe the Counter kernel services in detail. The Counter services maintain and update accumulators for the number of counter ticks used for associated Alarms.

<b>XX_ClearCounterAttr .....</b>	<b>190</b>
<b>KS_CloseCounter .....</b>	<b>192</b>
<b>INIT_CounterClassProp .....</b>	<b>194</b>
<b>KS_DefCounterName .....</b>	<b>196</b>
<b>XX_DefCounterProp .....</b>	<b>198</b>
<b>XX_GetCounterAcc .....</b>	<b>202</b>
<b>KS_GetCounterClassProp .....</b>	<b>204</b>
<b>KS_GetCounterName .....</b>	<b>206</b>
<b>XX_GetCounterProp .....</b>	<b>208</b>
<b>XX_GetElapsedCounterTicks .....</b>	<b>210</b>
<b>KS_LookupCounter .....</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>KS_OpenCounter .....</b>	<b>216</b>
<b>XX_SetCounterAcc .....</b>	<b>218</b>
<b>XX_SetCounterAttr .....</b>	<b>220</b>
<b>KS_UseCounter .....</b>	<b>222</b>

# XX\_ClearCounterAttr

Clear one or more attributes for a counter.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_ClearCounterAttr
- 3** KS\_ClearCounterAttr

## Synopsis

```
void XX_ClearCounterAttr (COUNTER counter,  
                          KATTRMASK amask)
```

## Inputs

- counter*     The handle of the counter containing the attributes to be cleared.
- amask*       A mask value containing the bits to clear in the attribute property of the specified counter.

## Description

The `XX_ClearCounterAttr` kernel service clears bits in the specified *counter*'s attribute property according to the bits specified in *amask*. For information about the Counter attributes, see “XX\_ClearCounterAttr” on page 190.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_COUNTER` if the specified counter ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_COUNTER` if the specified counter has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 6-1 on page 191, the Current Thread clears the disable bit in the counter specified in `COUNTER1` to enable further processing of events on this Counter.

**Example 6-1.** Clear Counter Attribute

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kcounter.h"         /* COUNTER1 */

/* clear disable bit in counter to re-enable */
TS_ClearCounterAttr (COUNTER1, ATTR_COUNTER_DISABLE);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**            [XX\\_SetCounterAttr](#), page 220

# KS\_CloseCounter

End the use of a dynamic counter.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_CloseCounter (COUNTER counter)
```

## Input

*counter*      A handle for a dynamic counter.

## Description

The `KS_CloseCounter` kernel service ends the Current Task's use of the specified dynamic *counter*. When closing *counter*, the service detaches the caller's use of it. If the caller is the last user of *counter*, the service releases *counter* to the free pool of dynamic counters for reuse. If there is at least one other task still using *counter*, the service does not release the counter to the free pool but completes successfully.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Counter class during system generation.

---

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service is successful.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the specified counter is not dynamic.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_INUSE` if the specified counter does not correspond to an active dynamic counter.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_INUSE` if the Current Task's use of the specified counter is closed but the counter remains open for use by other tasks.



---

**Note:** `RC_OBJECT_INUSE` does not necessarily indicate an error condition. The calling task must interpret its meaning.

---

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

`FE_ILLEGAL_COUNTER` if the specified counter ID is not valid.

## Example

In Example 6-2, the Current Task waits on a signal from another task indicating that it is time to close the dynamic counter specified in `dyncounter`. When the signal is received, the Current Task closes the associated counter.

### Example 6-2. Close Counter

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

COUNTER dyncounter;
SEMA dynsema;

KS_TestSemaW (dynsema);      /* wait for signal */
KS_CloseCounter (dyncounter); /* then close the counter */
```

---

## See Also

`KS_OpenCounter`, page 216

# INIT\_CounterClassProp

Initialize the Counter object class properties.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC INIT_CounterClassProp  
    (const KCLASSPROP *pclassprop)
```

## Input

*pclassprop*      A pointer to a Counter object class properties structure.

## Description

During the **RTXC** Kernel initialization procedure, you must define the kernel objects needed by the kernel to perform the application. The `INIT_CounterClassProp` kernel service allocates space for the Counter object class in system RAM. The amount of RAM to allocate, and all other properties of the class, are specified in the `KCLASSPROP` structure pointed to by *pclassprop*.

Example 2-13 on page 44 shows the organization the `KCLASSPROP` structure.

The *attributes* element of the Counter `KCLASSPROP` structure supports the class property attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 6-2 on page 204.

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ `RC_NO_RAM` if the initialization fails because there is insufficient system RAM available.

## Example

During system initialization, the startup code must initialize the Counter object class before using any kernel service for that class. The system generation process produces a `KCLASSPROP` structure containing the information about the kernel object necessary for its initialization. In Example 6-3 on page 195, that structure is referenced externally to the code module.



**Example 6-3. Initialize Counter Object Class Properties**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

extern const SYSPROP sysprop;
extern const KCLASSPROP counterclassprop;

KSRC userinit (void)
{
    KSRC ksrc;

    /* initialize the kernel workspace and allocate RAM */
    /* for required classes, etc. */

    if ((ksrc = INIT_SysProp (&sysprop)) != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("Kernel initialization failure");
        return (ksrc); /* end initialization process */
    }
    /* kernel is initialized */

    /* Need to initialize the necessary kernel object classes */

    /* Initialize the Counter kernel object class */
    if ((ksrc = INIT_CounterClassProp (&counterclassprop))
        != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("No RAM for Counter init");
        return (ksrc); /* end initialization process */
    }

    ... Continue with system initialization
}
```

---

**See Also**[KS\\_GetCounterClassProp](#), page 204

## KS\_DefCounterName

Define the name of a previously opened dynamic counter.

### Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_DefCounterName (COUNTER counter,  
                        const char *pname)
```

### Inputs

*counter*     The handle of the counter being defined.

*pname*       A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

### Description

The KS\_DefCounterName kernel service names or renames the specified dynamic *counter*. The service uses the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* for the new name.

Static counters cannot be named or renamed under program control.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Counter class during system generation.

This service does not check for duplicate counter names.

---

### Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ RC\_STATIC\_OBJECT if the counter being named is static.
- ▶ RC\_OBJECT\_NOT\_FOUND if the Dynamics attribute of the Counter class is not enabled.
- ▶ RC\_OBJECT\_NOT\_INUSE if the specified counter does not correspond to an active dynamic counter.

### Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

FE\_ILLEGAL\_COUNTER if the specified counter ID is not valid.

## Example

Example 6-4 assigns the name `NewCounter` to the counter specified in `dyncounter` so other users may reference it by name.

### Example 6-4. Assign Counter Name

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"         /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

KSRC ksrc;
COUNTER dyncounter;

if ((ksrc = KS_DefCounterName (dyncounter, "NewCounter"))
    != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND)
        putline ("Dynamic Counters are not enabled");
    else if (ksrc == RC_STATIC_OBJECT)
    {
        sprintf (buf, "Counter %d is a static counter", dyncounter);
        putline (buf);
    }
    else
    {
        sprintf (buf, "Counter %d is not active.", dyncounter);
        putline (buf);
    }
}

... naming operation was successful. Continue
```

---

## See Also

`KS_OpenCounter`, page 216  
`KS_GetCounterName`, page 206  
`KS_LookupCounter`, page 214  
`KS_UseCounter`, page 222

# XX\_DefCounterProp

Define the counter’s properties.

## Zones

- 2
- TS\_DefCounterProp
- 3
- KS\_DefCounterProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_DefCounterProp (COUNTER counter,
                        const COUNTERPROP *pcounterprop)
```

## Inputs

- counter*
- The handle of the counter being defined.
- pcounterprop*
- A pointer to a Counter properties structure.

## Description

The XX\_DefCounterProp kernel service defines the properties of the specified *counter* using the values contained in the COUNTERPROP structure pointed to by *pcounterprop*.

Example 6-5 shows the organization of the COUNTERPROP structure.

### Example 6-5. Counter Properties Structure

```
typedef struct
{
    KATTR attributes;      /* counter attributes */
    EVNTSRC evntsrc;
    KMODULUS modulus;
} COUNTERPROP;
```

The *attributes* element of a Counter object supports the attribute and corresponding mask listed in Table 6-1.

**Table 6-1.** Counter Attributes and Masks

Attribute	Mask
Counter Disable	ATTR_COUNTER_DISABLE
Systime Time Counter	ATTR_COUNTER_TIMEBASE
Tick Slice Counter	ATTR_COUNTER_TICKSLICE

The *Counter Disable* attribute controls updating of the counter's tick accumulator during a `XX_ProcessEventSourceTick` service. When you set `ATTR_COUNTER_DISABLE`, the counter's tick accumulator is frozen. When you clear the attribute, the counter's tick accumulator can be updated. The attribute is cleared by default.

The *System Time Counter* attribute controls the counter's use as the system timebase. The attribute is cleared by default. When you set `ATTR_COUNTER_TIMEBASE` using this service or the `XX_SetCounterAttr` service, the counter has special significance as the system timebase. Therefore, for kernel services in which the user wants to use the system timebase counter as a referenced object, the actual identity of the timebase counter can be represented by the construct `(COUNTER) 0` (or some suitable symbol defined as `(COUNTER) 0`). This construct makes it possible to reference the system timebase counter without actually knowing its identity.



---

**Note:** The developer must ensure that one, and only one, counter in the system has the *System Time Counter* attribute enabled. The **RTXC** Kernel does not provide any checking to ensure only one counter has this attribute enabled. After clearing the `ATTR_COUNTER_TIMEBASE` attribute on one counter, you may enable it on another.

---

The *Tick Slice Counter* attribute controls the counter's use in tick slice scheduling by the **RTXC** Kernel. The attribute is cleared by default. When you set `ATTR_COUNTER_TICKSLICE` using this service or the `XX_SetCounterAttr` service, the counter is used as the source of counter ticks for tick sliced scheduling of tasks by the **RTXC/ms** Scheduler. In this manner, tasks can use any form of tick, not just time, for tick sliced scheduling.



---

**Note:** Like the *System Time Counter* attribute, there should be one, and only one, counter with the *Tick Slice Counter* attribute enabled at any given time. You may use different counters for the tick slice counter and the system timebase counter.

---

Define a counter's properties only when the counter is not busy.

This kernel service is not intended to permit unrestricted enabling and disabling of a counter's attributes. While no restrictions are placed on its frequency of use, you should use this service before the first use of *counter*.

If more than one counter has either the *Systime Time Counter* or *Tick Slice Counter* attributes enabled, the **RTXC** Kernel recognizes only the counter most recently defined that has either attribute set for their intended purposes. For information about setting Counter attributes, see “XX\_SetCounterAttr” on page 220.

---

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ **FE\_ILLEGAL\_COUNTER** if the specified counter ID is not valid.
- ▶ **FE\_ILLEGAL\_EVENTSOURCE** if the specified event source ID is not valid.

## Example

During system initialization, the startup routine must create and initialize the Counter object class and define the properties of all the static counters before the system can process the events on the counters, as illustrated in Example 6-6 on page 201.

**Example 6-6.** Define Counter Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

extern const KCLASSPROP counterclassprop;
extern const COUNTERPROP counterprop[];

KSRC ksrc;
int objnum;

/* initialize the Counter class/object data */
if ((ksrc = INIT_CounterClassProp (&counterclassprop))
    != RC_GOOD)
    return ksrc;

for (objnum = 1; objnum <= counterclassprop.n_statics; objnum++)
{
    TS_DefCounterProp (objnum, &counterprop[objnum]);
}

... continue
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_GetCounterProp, page 208  
INIT\_CounterClassProp, page 194  
KS\_OpenCounter, page 216

# XX\_GetCounterAcc

Get the counter's tick accumulator.

## Zones

<b>1</b>	IS_GetCounterAcc
<b>2</b>	TS_GetCounterAcc
<b>3</b>	KS_GetCounterAcc

## Synopsis

```
TICKS XX_GetCounterAcc (COUNTER counter)
```

## Input

*counter*      The handle of the counter to be read.

## Description

The KS\_GetCounterClassProp kernel service reads the specified *counter's* tick accumulator and returns the value to the caller.

## Output

This service returns the tick accumulator value as a TICKS type value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_COUNTER if the specified counter ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_COUNTER if the specified counter has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 6-7 on page 203, the Current Thread needs to know how many ticks have occurred on the counter specified in COUNTER1 and on the counter used for the system timebase.



**Example 6-7. Read Counter Accumulator**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kcounter.h"         /* COUNTER1 */

TICKS currticks;

/* get current tick count on COUNTER1 */
currticks = TS_GetCounterAcc (COUNTER1);

... do something with currticks from COUNTER1

currticks = TS_GetCounterAcc (TIMEBASE);

... do something with currticks from system time base

... continue
```

---

**See Also**            [XX\\_GetElapsedCounterTicks](#), page 210

# KS\_GetCounterClassProp

Get the Counter object class properties.

## Synopsis

```
const KCLASSPROP * KS_GetCounterClassProp
(int *pint)
```

## Input

*pint*            A pointer to a variable in which to store the number of available dynamic counters. This argument may be a null pointer ((void \*)0).

## Description

The KS\_GetCounterClassProp kernel service obtains a pointer to the KCLASSPROP structure that was used during system initialization by the INIT\_CounterClassProp kernel service to initialize the Counter object class properties. If *pint* is not null ((int \*)0), the service returns the number of available dynamic counters in the variable pointed to by *pint*. If *pint* is null, the service does not return the number of available dynamic counters.

Example 2-13 on page 44 shows the organization of the KCLASSPROP structure.

The value of the *attributes* element of the Counter KCLASSPROP structure is determined by the selections you make during the system configuration procedure. It supports the class property attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 6-2.

**Table 6-2.** Counter Class Attributes and Masks

Attribute	Mask
Static Names	ATTR_STATIC_NAMES
Dynamics	ATTR_DYNAMICS

## Output

If successful, this service returns a pointer to a KCLASSPROP structure.

If the Counter class is not initialized, the service returns a null pointer ((KCLASSPROP \*)0).

If *pint* is not null, the service returns the number of available dynamic counters, provided that the *Dynamics* attribute is enabled (set). If the *Dynamics* attribute is disabled (cleared), the service stores a value of zero (0) in the variable pointed to by *pint*.

## Example

In Example 6-8, the Current Task accesses the information contained in the KCLASSPROP structure for the Counter object class.

### Example 6-8. Read Counter Object Class Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

KCLASSPROP *pcounterclassprop;
int free_dyn;

/* Get the counter kernel object class properties */
if ((pcounterclassprop = KS_GetCounterClassProp (&free_dyn))
    == (KCLASSPROP *)0)
{
    putline ("Counter Class not initialized");
}
else
{
    ... counter object class properties are available for use
    "free_dyn" contains the number of available dynamic counterres
}
}
```

---

## See Also

INIT\_CounterClassProp, page 194

## KS\_GetCounterName

Get the counter's name.

### Synopsis

```
char * KS_GetCounterName (COUNTER counter)
```

### Input

*counter*     The handle of the counter being queried.

### Description

The KS\_GetCounterName kernel service obtains a pointer to the null-terminated string containing the name of the specified *counter*. The counter may be static or dynamic.



**Note:** To use this service on static counters, you must enable the *Static Names* attribute of the Counter class during system generation.

---

### Output

If *counter* has a name, this service returns a pointer to the null-terminated name string.

If *counter* has no name, the service returns a null pointer ((char \*)0).

### Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:  
FE\_ILLEGAL\_COUNTER if the specified counter ID is not valid.

### Example

In Example 6-9 on page 207, the Current Task reports the name of the dynamic counter specified in *dyncounter*.

**Example 6-9.** Read Counter Name

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"         /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

static char buf[128];

COUNTER dyncounter;
char *pname;

if ((pname = KS_GetCounterName (dyncounter)) == (char *)0)
    sprintf (buf, "Counter %d has no name", dyncounter);
else
    sprintf (buf, "Counter %d name is %s", dyncounter, pname);

putline (buf); /* send buffer to console */
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_DefCounterName, page 196  
KS\_OpenCounter, page 216

# XX\_GetCounterProp

Get the counter's properties.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetCounterProp
- 3** KS\_GetCounterProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_GetCounterProp (COUNTER counter,  
                        COUNTERPROP *pcounterprop)
```

## Inputs

- counter*            The handle of the counter being queried.
- pcounterprop*      A pointer to an Counter properties structure.

## Description

The XX\_GetCounterProp service obtains all of the property values of the specified *counter* in a single call. The service stores the property values in the COUNTERPROP structure pointed to by *pcounterprop*.

The COUNTERPROP structure has the following organization:

---

```
typedef struct  
{  
    KATTR attributes;       /* Counter attributes (DISABLE only) */  
    EVNTSRC evntsrc;  
    KMODULUS modulus;  
} COUNTERPROP;
```

---

For information about the Counter properties, see “XX\_GetCounterProp” on page 208.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_COUNTER if the specified counter ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_COUNTER if the specified counter has not yet been initialized.

**Example**

In Example 6-10, the Current Thread needs to know the status of the ATTR\_COUNTER\_DISABLE attribute for the counter specified in COUNTER1.

**Example 6-10. Read Counter Properties**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kcounter.h"         /* COUNTER1 */

COUNTERPROP counterprop; /* a counter properties structure */

/* get current Counter Properties */
TS_GetCounterProp (COUNTER1, &counterprop);

/* is counter disabled? */
if (counterprop.attributes && ATTR_COUNTER_DISABLE)
{
    ... do some processing if Counter is disabled
}

... continue
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_DefCounterProp, page 198

## XX\_GetElapsedCounterTicks

Compute the number of counter ticks that have elapsed between two events.

### Zones

- 2** TS\_GetElapsedCounterTicks
- 3** KS\_GetElapsedCounterTicks

### Synopsis

```
TICKS XX_GetElapsedCounterTicks (COUNTER counter,  
                                TICKS *pprevticks)
```

### Inputs

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| <i>counter</i>    | The handle of the counter to use for determining the number of elapsed ticks.  |
| <i>pprevticks</i> | A pointer to a variable that contains the value of the tick accumulator for the specified <i>counter</i> at a previous event or point in time. |

### Description

The `XX_GetElapsedCounterTicks` service returns the number of ticks on counter that have elapsed between the current value of *counter's* tick accumulator and a previous value of *counter's* tick accumulator represented by the value pointed to by *pprevticks*. The service computes the difference between the current value of *counter's* tick accumulator and the previous value and returns it to the caller as the number of elapsed ticks. The service then prepares for the next event by putting the current value of *counter's* tick accumulator into the variable pointed to by *pprevticks*.

Correct calculation of an elapsed number of ticks requires two service calls. The first call puts the initial value of *counter's* tick accumulator into the variable pointed to by *pprevticks* and should be done using either this service or the `XX_GetCounterAcc` kernel service. The second call should use this service as it returns the number of ticks that have elapsed since the first call. Putting the current tick accumulator value into *pprevticks* allows you to measure sequential events with single calls to `XX_GetElapsedCounterTicks` after each subsequent period.



Accuracy of the elapsed count is limited by the tick frequency of the specified counter and is guaranteed to be less than the duration of one tick.



---

**Note:** If you use the `XX_GetElapsedCounterTicks` kernel service to initialize the variable at *pprevticks*, the `TICKS` value returned by that service call should be discarded because it is unreliable.

---

## Output

This service returns the number of elapsed counter ticks as a `TICKS` type value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_COUNTER` if the specified counter ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_COUNTER` if the specified counter has not yet been initialized.

## Example

Example 6-11 on page 212 calculates the number of ticks on the system timebase counter, defined as `TIMEBASE`, that elapse between two consecutive states of an on/off switch, where the change-of-state event is associated with the `SWITCH` semaphore. The current state of the switch is unknown.

**Example 6-11. Obtain Elapsed Counter Ticks between Two Events**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */
#include "ksema.h"            /* defines SWITCH */

TICKS timestamp, diff;

/* wait for the first, and change of state */
KS_TestSemaW (SWITCH);

/* initialize timestamp and disregard return value */
KS_GetElapsedCounterTicks (TIMEBASE, &timestamp);

/*-----*/
/* initialization of timestamp could have been done by the      */
/* following:                                                    */
/* timebase = KS_GetCounterAcc (TIMEBASE);                      */
/*-----*/

KS_TestSemaW (SWITCH); /* wait for switch change event */
                      /* marking end of first state */

/* get elapsed time since t(0) */
diff = KS_GetElapsedCounterTicks (TIMEBASE, &timestamp);

... use the elapsed number of ticks in "diff" for something ...

KS_TestSemaW (SWITCH); /* wait for next switch change */
                      /* marking end of second state */

/* get elapsed time since start of second state */
diff = KS_GetElapsedCounterTicks (TIMEBASE, &timestamp);

... Use the second period's elapsed time
```

---



# KS\_LookupCounter

Look up a counter by name to get its handle.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_LookupCounter (const char *pname,  
                        COUNTER *pcounter)
```

## Inputs

*pname*            A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*pcounter*        A pointer to a variable in which to store the counter handle.

## Description

The `KS_LookupCounter` kernel service obtains the handle of the static or dynamic counter whose name matches the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*. The lookup process terminates when it finds a match between the specified string and a static or dynamic counter name or when it finds no match. The service stores the handle of the matching counter in the variable pointed to by *pcounter*. The service searches dynamic names, if any, first.



---

**Note:** To use this service on static counters, you must enable the *Static Names* attribute of the Counter class during system generation.

This service has no effect on the registration of the specified counter by the Current Task.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of counter names in use.

---

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the search succeeds. The service also stores the handle of the matching counter in the variable pointed to by *pcounter*.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the service finds no matching counter name.

## Example

In Example 6-12, the Current Task needs to use the dynamic counter named Chnl2Counter. If the counter is found, the Current Task reads its accumulator.

### Example 6-12. Look Up Counter by Name

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

COUNTER dyncounter;
TICKS chnl2cnts;
KSRC ksrc;

/* lookup the counter name to see if it exists */
if (KS_LookupCounter ("Chnl2Counter", &dyncounter) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... Counter name not found. Deal with it
}
else /* counter exists */
{
    /* get the counter's accumulator */
    chnl2cnts = KS_GetCounterAcc (dyncounter);

    ok to use accumulator for "Chnl2Counter" now
}
}
```

---

## See Also

KS\_DefCounterName, page 196  
KS\_GetCounterName, page 206  
KS\_OpenCounter, page 216

# KS\_OpenCounter

Allocate and name a dynamic counter.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_OpenCounter (const char *pname,  
                     COUNTER *pcounter)
```

## Inputs

*pname*            A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*pcounter*        A pointer to a variable in which to store the counter handle.

## Description

The `KS_OpenCounter` service allocates, names, and obtains the handle of a dynamic counter. If a dynamic counter is available and there is no existing counter, static or dynamic, with a name matching the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*, the service allocates a dynamic counter and applies the name referenced by *pname* to the new counter. The service stores the handle of the new dynamic counter in the variable pointed to by *pcounter*. The kernel stores only the address of the name internally, which means that the same array cannot be used to build multiple dynamic counter names.

If *pname* is null (`((char *)0)`), the service does not assign a name to the dynamic counter. However, if *pname* points to a null string (`" "`), the name is legal as long as no other counter is already using a null string as its name.

If the service finds an existing counter with a matching name, it does not open a new counter and returns a value indicating an unsuccessful operation.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Counter class during system generation.

If the pointer to the counter name is not null (`((char *)0)`), the time required to perform this operation varies with the number of counter names in use.

If the pointer to the counter name is null, no search of

counter names takes place and the time to perform the service is fixed. You can define the counter name at a later time with a call to the `KS_DefCounterName` service.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully. The service also stores the handle of the allocated counter in the variable pointed to by *pcounter*.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_ALREADY_EXISTS` if the name search finds another counter whose name matches the specified string.
- ▶ `RC_NO_OBJECT_AVAILABLE` if the name search finds no match but all dynamic counters are in use.

## Example

Example 6-13 attempts to allocate a dynamic counter and names it `Chnl2Counter`. If the name is already being used, the example outputs a message on the console.

### Example 6-13. Allocate and Name Counter

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

KSRC ksrc;
COUNTER dyncounter;

if ((ksrc = KS_OpenCounter ("Chnl2Counter", &dyncounter))
    != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_OBJECT_ALREADY_EXISTS)
        putline ("Chnl2Counter counter name in use");
    else if (ksrc == RC_NO_OBJECT_AVAILABLE)
        putline ("No dynamic counters available");
    else
        putline ("Counters object class not defined");
}

... counter was opened correctly. Okay to use it now
```

---

## See Also

`KS_CloseCounter`, page 192  
`KS_LookupCounter`, page 214  
`KS_UseCounter`, page 222

# XX\_SetCounterAcc

Set the accumulator of a counter to a specified value.

## Zones

**2** TS\_SetCounterAcc  
**3** KS\_SetCounterAcc

## Synopsis

```
void XX_SetCounterAcc (COUNTER counter, TICKS ticks)
```

## Inputs

*counter*     The handle of the counter to be read.  
*ticks*        The value to store in the accumulator of the counter.

## Description

The `XX_SetCounterAcc` service sets the specified *counter*'s tick accumulator to the value in *ticks*.

This service is useful for setting a counter to a specific count that has some significance in engineering units. For example, you can easily establish an accurate real-time clock with one-second accuracy. First, set up a counter that increments its tick accumulator once per second. Then use a function to convert the current date and time to the number of elapsed seconds since a standard date (most runtime libraries include a function for conversion of dates and time to Base Universal Time beginning 1-JAN-1970). Finally, set the 1-Hz counter's tick accumulator to the resulting number of seconds since the base date with the `XX_SetCounterAcc` service.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_COUNTER` if the specified counter ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_COUNTER` if the specified counter has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 6-14 on page 219, the Current Thread reads the number of ticks in `COUNTER1` that have occurred since the thread's last execution cycle. When the counter's tick accumulator is read, the thread sets the counter's tick accumulator to zero.



**Example 6-14.** Set Counter Accumulator

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kcounter.h"         /* COUNTER1 */

TICKS nticks;

/* first, get the number of ticks since last time thread executed */
nticks = GetCounterAcc (COUNTER1);

/* then set counter accumulator to 0 */
TS_SetCounterAcc (COUNTER1, (TICKS)0);

...do something with nticks

... continue
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_GetCounterClassProp, page 204

# XX\_SetCounterAttr

Set one or more attributes for a counter.

## Zones

**2** TS\_SetCounterAttr  
**3** KS\_SetCounterAttr

## Synopsis

```
void XX_SetCounterAttr (COUNTER counter,  
                        KATTRMASK amask)
```

## Inputs

*counter*     The handle of the counter containing the attributes to be cleared.

*amask*       A mask value containing the bits to set in the attribute property of the specified counter.

## Description

The `XX_SetCounterAttr` service sets bits in the specified *counter*'s attribute property according to the bits specified in *amask*. For information about the Counter attributes, see “`XX_DefCounterProp`” on page 198.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_COUNTER` if the specified counter ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_COUNTER` if the specified counter has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 6-15 on page 221, the Current Thread needs to disable the counter specified in `COUNTER1` to prevent further processing of events by that counter.

**Example 6-15.** Set Counter Attribute Bits

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"      /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kcounter.h"     /* COUNTER1 */

/* disable COUNTER1 */
TS_SetCounterAttr (COUNTER1, ATTR_COUNTER_DISABLE);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**            [XX\\_ClearCounterAttr](#), page 190

## KS\_UseCounter

Look up a dynamic counter by name and mark it for use.

### Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_UseCounter (const char *pname,  
                    COUNTER *pcounter)
```

### Inputs

*pname*            A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*pcounter*        A pointer to a variable in which to store the counter handle.

### Description

The `KS_UseCounter` service acquires the handle of a dynamic counter by looking up the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* in the list of counter names. If there is a match with a dynamic counter, the service registers the counter for future use by the Current Task and stores that counter's handle in the variable pointed to by *pcounter*. This procedure allows the Current Task to reference the dynamic counter successfully in subsequent kernel service calls.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the *Dynamics* attribute of the Counter class during system generation.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of counter names in use.

---

### Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the search is successful. The service also stores the matching counter's handle in the variable pointed to by *pcounter*.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the specified name belongs to a static counter.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the service finds no matching counter name.

### Example

Example 6-16 on page 223 locates a dynamic counter named `DynMuxCounter3` and obtains its handle for subsequent use.

**Example 6-16.** Read Counter Handle and Register It

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

KSRC ksrc;
COUNTER dyncounter;

if ((ksrc = KS_UseCounter ("DynMuxCounter3", &dyncounter))
    != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_STATIC_OBJECT)
        putline ("DynMuxCounter3 is a static counter");
    else
        putline ("Counter DynMuxCounter3 name not found");
}

... counter was found and its handle is in dyncounter.
   Okay to use it now
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_DefCounterProp, page 198  
XX\_ClearCounterAttr, page 190  
KS\_OpenCounter, page 216



# CHAPTER 7 Alarm Services

---

## In This Chapter

We describe the Alarm kernel services in detail. The Alarm services create, arm, and start alarms as well as disarm and stop them. Alarms are related to Counters in that alarms utilize the tick accumulators of Counters to determine when an alarm reaches its point of expiration.

<b>XX_AbortAlarm</b> .....	<b>226</b>
<b>INIT_AlarmClassProp</b> .....	<b>228</b>
<b>XX_ArmAlarm</b> .....	<b>230</b>
<b>XX_CancelAlarm</b> .....	<b>232</b>
<b>KS_CloseAlarm</b> .....	<b>234</b>
<b>XX_DefAlarmAction</b> .....	<b>236</b>
<b>XX_DefAlarmActionArm</b> .....	<b>238</b>
<b>KS_DefAlarmName</b> .....	<b>240</b>
<b>XX_DefAlarmProp</b> .....	<b>242</b>
<b>KS_DefAlarmSema</b> .....	<b>244</b>
<b>KS_GetAlarmClassProp</b> .....	<b>246</b>
<b>KS_GetAlarmName</b> .....	<b>248</b>
<b>XX_GetAlarmProp</b> .....	<b>250</b>
<b>KS_GetAlarmSema</b> .....	<b>252</b>
<b>XX_GetAlarmTicks</b> .....	<b>254</b>
<b>KS_LookupAlarm</b> .....	<b>256</b>
<b>KS_OpenAlarm</b> .....	<b>258</b>
<b>XX_RearmAlarm</b> .....	<b>260</b>
<b>KS_TestAlarm</b> .....	<b>262</b>
<b>KS_TestAlarmT</b> .....	<b>265</b>
<b>KS_TestAlarmW</b> .....	<b>268</b>
<b>KS_UseAlarm</b> .....	<b>270</b>

# XX\_AbortAlarm

Abort an active alarm.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_AbortAlarm
- 3** KS\_AbortAlarm

## Synopsis

TICKS XX\_AbortAlarm (ALARM alarm)

## Input

*alarm*      The handle for the alarm to be aborted.

## Description

The XX\_AbortAlarm kernel service stops the specified *alarm* and removes it from the list of active alarms on its associated counter, thereby making it inactive. If the alarm is already inactive, this service has no effect on it.

All tasks waiting for the expiration of the alarm as a result of a previous call to KS\_TestAlarmW or KS\_TestAlarmT become unblocked and these services return a KSRC value of RC\_ALARM\_ABORTED.

In addition, if there is a *Alarm\_Abort* (AA) semaphore associated with the alarm, then the service signals the AA semaphore.

## Output

If the user aborts an active alarm, the service returns the number of counter ticks remaining on the alarm.

If the alarm was inactive when stopped, the service ignores the request and returns a value of zero (0) for remaining ticks.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_ALARM if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 7-1 on page 227, the Current Task starts the static alarm specified in ALARM1. The alarm uses the counter specified in TIMEBASE and has an initial period of 150 msec and a cyclic period



of 100 msec. After starting the alarm, the task waits for the alarm to expire before starting its procedure. It then runs periodically every 100 msec for a total of five iterations, after which it stops the alarm and continues processing.

### Example 7-1. Abort Alarm

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kalarm.h"           /* defines ALARM1 */

int i;

/* start alarm with 150 ms initial period & 100 ms cycle period */
KS_ArmAlarm (ALARM1);

/* wait for alarm to expire */
KS_TestAlarmW (ALARM1, (TICKS *)0);

for (i = 0; i < 5; i++) /* processing loop of task */
{
    /* wait on alarm expiration but ignore time remaining */
    KS_TestAlarmW (ALARM1, (TICKS *)0);

    ... Execute loop procedure, then wait for the next loop time
}
/* kill the alarm and ignore time remaining */
KS_AbortAlarm (ALARM1);

... continue
```

---

### See Also

XX\_ArmAlarm, page 230  
KS\_TestAlarmW, page 268

# INIT\_AlarmClassProp

Initialize the Alarm object class properties.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC INIT_AlarmClassProp  
    (const KCLASSPROP *pclassprop)
```

## Input

*pclassprop*      A pointer to a Alarm object class properties structure.

## Description

During the RTXC initialization procedure, you must define the kernel objects needed by the kernel to perform the application. The `INIT_AlarmClassProp` kernel service allocates space for the Alarm object class in system RAM. The amount of RAM to allocate, and all other properties of the class, are specified in the `KCLASSPROP` structure pointed to by *pclassprop*.

Example 2-13 on page 44 shows the organization of the `KCLASSPROP` structure.

The *attributes* element of the Alarm `KCLASSPROP` structure supports the class property attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 7-1 on page 246.

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ `RC_NO_RAM` if the initialization fails because there is insufficient system RAM available.

## Example

During system initialization, the startup code must initialize the Alarm object class before using any kernel service for that class. In Example 7-2 on page 229, the system generation process produced a `KCLASSPROP` structure containing the information about the kernel object necessary for its initialization. The example references that structure externally to the code module.

**Example 7-2. Initialize Alarm Object Class**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

static char buf[128];

extern const SYSPROP sysprop;
extern const KCLASSPROP alarmclassprop;

KSRC userinit (void)
{
    KSRC ksrc;

    /* initialize the kernel workspace and allocate RAM */
    /* for required classes, etc. */

    if ((ksrc = INIT_SysProp (&sysprop)) != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("Kernel initialization failure");
        return (ksrc); /* end initialization process */
    }
    /* kernel is initialized */

    /* Need to initialize the necessary kernel */
    /* object classes */

    /* Initialize the Alarm kernel object class */
    if ((ksrc = INIT_AlarmClassProp (&alarmclassprop))
        != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("No RAM for Alarm init");
        return (ksrc); /* end initialization process */
    }

    ... Continue with system initialization
}
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_CancelAlarm, page 232

# XX\_ArmAlarm

Arm and start an alarm.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_ArmAlarm
- 3** KS\_ArmAlarm

## Synopsis

KSRC XX\_ArmAlarm (ALARM alarm)

## Input

*alarm*      The handle of the alarm to be armed and started.

## Description

The XX\_ArmAlarm service arms and starts the specified *alarm*. Before performing this service on the alarm, you should define, through a call to XX\_DefAlarmProp, its associated counter and the initial and cyclic interval properties in ticks appropriate to that counter.

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the alarm is successfully started.
- ▶ RC\_ALARM\_ACTIVE if the service attempts to start an active alarm.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_ALARM if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.

## Example

Example 7-3 on page 231 arms and starts the static alarm specified in ALARM1. The task first tests the alarm to insure that it is not already active. If not active, it arms and starts the alarm using its defined properties. The alarm is to be relative to the counter specified in TIMEBASE and have an initial period of 150 msec and a cyclic period of 100 msec. After starting the alarm, the task waits for the alarm to expire before starting its procedure. It then runs periodically every 100 msec.

**Example 7-3. Arm Alarm**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"      /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kalarm.h"       /* defines ALARM1 */

static ALARMPROP alarmprop;

if (KS_TestAlarm (ALARM1, (TICKS *)0) == RC_ALARM_INACTIVE)
/* alarm is inactive. Okay to arm it and start it */
    KS_ArmAlarm (ALARM1);

/* alarm is active */

for (;;) /* processing loop of task */
{
    /* wait for alarm to expire */
    KS_TestAlarmW (ALARM1, (TICKS *)0);

    ... Do some processing, then wait for alarm to begin next loop
}
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_DefAlarmProp, page 242  
KS\_TestAlarm, page 262  
XX\_RearmAlarm, page 260

# XX\_CancelAlarm

Make an active alarm inactive.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_CancelAlarm
- 3** KS\_CancelAlarm

## Synopsis

TICKS XX\_CancelAlarm (ALARM alarm)

## Input

*alarm*      The handle for the alarm to be canceled.

## Description

The XX\_CancelAlarm service stops the specified *alarm* and removes it from the list of active alarms on its associated counter, thereby making it inactive. If *alarm* is already inactive, this service has no effect on it.

All tasks waiting for the expiration of the alarm as a result of a previous call to KS\_TestAlarmW or KS\_TestAlarmT become unblocked and these services return a KSRC value of RC\_ALARM\_CANCELED.

## Output

If the user cancels an active alarm, this service returns the number of counter ticks remaining on the alarm.

If the alarm was inactive when stopped, the service ignores the request and returns a value of zero (0) for remaining ticks.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_ALARM if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 7-4 on page 233, the Current Task cancels the static alarm specified in ALARM1 after it has gone through five expiration events.

**Example 7-4. Cancel Alarm**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"      /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kalarm.h"       /* defines ALARM1 */

int i;
TICKS residual;

/* start alarm with 150 ms initial period and 100 ms cycle period */
KS_ArmAlarm (ALARM1);

for (i = 0; i < 5; i++) /* processing loop of task */
{
    /* wait on alarm expiration but ignore time remaining */
    KS_TestAlarmW (ALARM1, (TICKS *)0);

    ... Execute loop procedure, then wait for the next loop time
}
/* kill the alarm and ignore time remaining */
KS_CancelAlarm (ALARM1);

... continue
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_ArmAlarm, page 230  
KS\_TestAlarmW, page 268

# KS\_CloseAlarm

End the use of a dynamic alarm.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_CloseAlarm (ALARM alarm)
```

## Input

*alarm*      The handle for the alarm.

## Description

The `KS_CloseAlarm` kernel service ends the Current Task's use of the specified dynamic *alarm*. When closing *alarm*, the kernel detaches the caller's use of it. If the caller is the last user of *alarm*, the alarm is released to the free pool of dynamic alarms for reuse. If there is at least one other task still using the alarm, the kernel does not release the alarm to the free pool but the service completes successfully.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the Dynamics attribute of the Alarm class during system generation.

---

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service is successful.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the specified alarm is not dynamic.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_INUSE` if the specified alarm does not correspond to an active dynamic alarm.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_INUSE` if the Current Task's use of the specified alarm is closed but the alarm remains open for use by other tasks.



---

**Note:** `RC_OBJECT_INUSE` does not necessarily indicate an error condition. The calling task must interpret its meaning.

---

## Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

`FE_ILLEGAL_ALARM` if the specified alarm ID is not valid.



## Example

In Example 7-5, the Current Task waits on a signal from another task indicating that it should close a dynamic alarm. The handle of the dynamic semaphore associated with the signal is specified in `dynsema`. The handle of the dynamic alarm is specified in `dynalarm`. When the signal is received, the Current Task closes the prescribed dynamic alarm.

### Example 7-5. Close Alarm

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

ALARM dynalarm;              /* dynamic alarm's handle stored here */
SEMA dynsema;                /* dynamic sema's handle stored here */
KSRC ksrc;

KS_TestSemaW (dynsema);      /* wait for signal */

/* then close the alarm */
if ((ksrc = KS_CloseAlarm (dynalarm)) != RC_GOOD)
{
    /* Something may be wrong, deal with it here */
}
... dynamic alarm is closed, continue
```

---

## See Also

`XX_ArmAlarm`, page 230

# XX\_DefAlarmAction

Define action to perform following an alarm expiration.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_DefAlarmAction
- 3** KS\_DefAlarmAction

## Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_DefAlarmAction (ALARM alarm,  
                        ALARM ACTION action, THREAD thread)
```

## Inputs

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| <i>alarm</i>  | The handle of the alarm to be associated with the end action operation.  |
| <i>action</i> | A code for the action to perform as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ SCHEDULETHREAD—Schedule <i>thread</i> at the expiration of <i>alarm</i>.</li><li>▶ DECRTHREADGATE—Decrement the thread gate value of <i>thread</i> upon the expiration of <i>alarm</i>.</li></ul> |
| <i>thread</i> | The handle of the thread on which to perform the end action operation.   |

## Description

The XX\_DefAlarmAction service defines the action to take following the expiration of the specified *alarm*. The XX\_ProcessEventSourceTick determines when an alarm expires. When an expiration occurs, the XX\_ProcessEventSourceTick service performs the specified end action operation, if defined, on the specified thread. If the source event processing is called from an ISR, the end action operation must perform IS\_ScheduleThread or IS\_DecrThreadGate, corresponding to the action codes SCHEDULETHREAD or DECRTHREADGATE, respectively. If a Zone 2 thread processes the source event and determines that an alarm has expired, the end action operation must perform TS\_ScheduleThread or TS\_DecrThreadGate, corresponding to the action code SCHEDULETHREAD or DECRTHREADGATE, respectively.

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service is successful.
- ▶ RC\_ALARM\_ACTIVE if the service attempts to start an active alarm.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_ALARM if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_THREAD if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_THREAD if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ FE\_INVALID\_ALARM\_ACTION if the specified alarm action value is not one of the four possible actions.

## Example

In Example 7-6, the thread specified in THREADA needs to be scheduled every 5 seconds. The Current Thread defines a SCHEDULETHREAD action to take place on the expiration of the ALARM1 static alarm, which is a cyclic alarm. The Current Thread then arms and starts the alarm.

### Example 7-6. Define Alarm End Action Operation

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */
#include "kalarm.h"           /* ALARM1 */

/* define alarm action on ALARM1 to schedule thread */
TS_DefAlarmAction (ALARM1, SCHEDULETHREAD, THREADA);

TS_ArmAlarm (ALARM1);

... continue
```

---

## XX\_DefAlarmActionArm

Define the action to perform when an alarm expires and then arm and start the alarm.

### Zones

- 2** TS\_DefAlarmActionArm
- 3** KS\_DefAlarmActionArm

### Synopsis

```
KSRC XX_DefAlarmActionArm (ALARM alarm,  
                           ALARMACTION action, THREAD thread)
```

### Inputs

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| <i>alarm</i>  | The handle of the alarm to be associated with the end action operation.  |
| <i>action</i> | A code for the action to perform as follows:<br><br>SCHEDULETHREAD—Schedule <i>thread</i> at the expiration of <i>alarm</i> .<br><br>DECRTHREADGATE—Decrement the thread gate value of <i>thread</i> upon the expiration of alarm. |
| <i>thread</i> | The handle of the thread on which to perform the end action operation.   |

### Description

The XX\_DefAlarmActionArm service arms the specified *alarm* and defines the action to take following its expiration. The XX\_ProcessEventSourceTick service determines when an alarm expires. When an expiration occurs, the XX\_ProcessEventSourceTick service performs the specified end action operation, if defined, on the specified thread. If the source event processing is called from an interrupt service routine, the end action operation must perform IS\_ScheduleThread or IS\_DecrThreadGate, corresponding to the action code SCHEDULETHREAD or DECRTHREADGATE, respectively. If a Zone 2 thread processes the source event and determines that an alarm has expired, the end action operation must perform TS\_ScheduleThread or TS\_DecrThreadGate, corresponding to the action code SCHEDULETHREAD or DECRTHREADGATE, respectively.

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service is successful.
- ▶ `RC_ALARM_ACTIVE` if the service attempts to start an active alarm.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_ALARM` if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_ALARM` if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD` if the specified thread ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD` if the specified thread has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ `FE_INVALID_ALARM_ACTION` if the specified alarm action value is not one of the four possible actions.

## Example

In Example 7-7, the thread specified in `THREADA` needs to be scheduled every 5 seconds. The Current Thread defines a `SCHEDULETHREAD` action on the `ALARM1` static alarm, which is a cyclic alarm. The alarm is then armed and started automatically.

### Example 7-7. Arm Alarm and Define Alarm Expiration Action Operation

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kthread.h"          /* THREADA */
#include "kalarm.h"           /* ALARM1 */

/* define alarm action on ALARM1 to schedule a thread from an ISR */
TS_DefAlarmActionArm (ALARM1, SCHEDULETHREAD, THREADA);

... continue
```

---

## KS\_DefAlarmName

Define the name of a previously opened alarm.

### Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_DefAlarmName (ALARM alarm,  
                      const char *pname)
```

### Inputs

*alarm*        The handle of the alarm being defined.

*pname*        A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

### Description

The `KS_DefAlarmName` kernel service names or renames the specified dynamic *alarm*. The service uses the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* for the alarm's new name.

Static alarms cannot be named or renamed under program control.



**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the Dynamics attribute of the Alarm class during system generation.

This service does not check for duplicate alarm names.

---

### Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the alarm being named is static.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the Dynamics attribute of the Alarm class is not enabled.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_INUSE` if the dynamic alarm being named does not correspond to an open dynamic alarm.

### Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:

`FE_ILLEGAL_ALARM` if the specified alarm ID is not valid.

**Example**

Example 7-8 assigns the name `NewAlarm` to the previously opened dynamic alarm specified in `dynalarm` so other users may reference it by name.

**Example 7-8. Define Alarm Name**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

ALARM dynalarm;

if (KS_DefAlarmName (dynalarm, "NewAlarm") != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... Something may be wrong. Deal with it here
}
... naming operation was successful. Continue
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_OpenAlarm, page 258  
KS\_GetAlarmName, page 248  
KS\_LookupAlarm, page 256  
KS\_UseAlarm, page 270

# XX\_DefAlarmProp

Define the properties of a alarm.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_DefAlarmProp
- 3** KS\_DefAlarmProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_DefAlarmProp (ALARM alarm,  
                     const ALARMPROP *palarmprop)
```

## Inputs

- alarm*            The handle of the alarm being defined.
- palarmprop*      A pointer to an Alarm properties structure.

## Description

The `XX_DefAlarmProp` kernel service defines the properties of the specified *alarm* using the values contained in the `ALARMPROP` structure pointed to by *palarmprop*.

Example 7-9 shows the organization of the `ALARMPROP` structure.

### Example 7-9. Alarm Properties Structure

---

```
typedef struct  
{  
    KATTR attributes;        /* alarm attributes */  
    COUNTER counter;        /* counter associated with alarm */  
    TICKS initial;          /* initial count period */  
    TICKS recycle;          /* recycle count period */  
} ALARMPROP;
```

---

The alarm attributes value is reserved for future use. The counter property specifies the counter the system will use to determine alarm expiration. The alarm's initial ticks value is specified in `initial`. The cyclic value is specified in `recycle`.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_ALARM` if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_COUNTER` if the specified counter ID is not valid.



## Example

In Example 7-10, the Current Task defines the properties of the previously opened dynamic alarm specified in `dynalarm`. The `attributes` element is set to zero (0). The alarm uses the `TIMEBASE` counter, which is the counter for the system timebase. The duration of the alarm's initial period is 500 ms and the cyclic period is 200 ms. After the task defines the alarm's properties, it uses the alarm to time some processing on a periodic basis.

### Example 7-10. Define Alarm Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kproject.h"         /* defines CLKTICK */

ALARM dynalarm;
static ALARMPROP alarmprop;

alarmprop.attributes = 0;
alarmprop.counter = TIMEBASE;
alarmprop.initial = (TICKS)500 / CLKTICK;
alarmprop.cycle = (TICKS)200 / CLKTICK;

KS_DefAlarmProp (dynalarm, &alarmprop);
KS_ArmAlarm (dynalarm);      /* start alarm now */

for (;;)
{
    /* wait for alarm to expire */
    KS_TestAlarmW (dynalarm, (TICKS *)0);

    ... perform some process, then wait for next period
}
```

---

## See Also

`XX_GetAlarmProp`, page 250  
`XX_GetAlarmTicks`, page 254  
`KS_OpenAlarm`, page 258  
`KS_TestAlarm`, page 262

## KS\_DefAlarmSema

Associate a semaphore with a alarm event.

### Synopsis

```
void KS_DefAlarmSema (ALARM alarm, SEMA sema,  
                     AEVENT event)
```

### Inputs

<i>alarm</i>	The handle of the alarm with which to associate the semaphore.
<i>sema</i>	The handle of the semaphore to associate with the alarm event.
<i>event</i>	An alarm event value.

### Description

The KS\_DefAlarmSema service associates the semaphore specified in *sema* with an *event*, either Alarm\_Expired (AE) or Alarm\_Aborted (AA), of the specified *alarm*.

The Alarm\_Expired and Alarm\_Aborted events have enumerated values of AE and AA, respectively. You should use one of these values when specifying the event argument.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the Semaphores attribute of the Alarm class during system generation.

---

### Output

This service does not return a value.

### Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_ALARM if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_SEMA if the specified semaphore ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_SEMA if the specified semaphore has not yet been initialized.

- ▶ FE\_INVALID\_ALARMEVENT if the specified semaphore event value is not either AE or AA.

## Example

In Example 7-11, the Current Task needs to know when either of two events occurs. The SWITCH1 event is associated with a switch closure. The task uses KS\_DefAlarmSema to associate the ALARMXP semaphore with the Alarm\_Expired (AE) event. Then the task waits for either event.

### Example 7-11. Define Alarm Semaphore

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"      /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "ksema.h"        /* defines SWITCH1, ALARMXP */
#include "kalarm.h"       /* defines ALARM1 */

SEMA cause;
const SEMA semalist[] =
{
    SWITCH1,
    ALARMXP,
    (SEMA)0              /* null terminated list */
};

/* associate ALARMXP with the expiration of ALARM1 */
KS_DefAlarmSema (ALARM1, ALARMXP, AE);

for (;;)
{
    /* wait for either of 2 events */
    cause = KS_TestSemaMW (semalist);

    switch (cause)
    {
        case SWITCH1:
            ... process SWITCH1 event...
            break;

        case ALARMXP:
            ... process ALARMXP event...
            break;
    } /* end of switch */
} /* end of forever */
```

---

## See Also

KS\_GetAlarmSema, page 252

# KS\_GetAlarmClassProp

Get the Alarm object class properties.

## Synopsis

```
const KCLASSPROP * KS_GetAlarmClassProp (int *pint)
```

## Input

*pint*            A pointer to a variable in which to store the number of available dynamic alarms.

## Description

The `KS_GetAlarmClassProp` kernel service obtains a pointer to the `KCLASSPROP` structure that was used during system initialization by the `INIT_AlarmClassProp` service to initialize the Alarm object class properties.

If *pint* contains a non-zero address, the service stores the current number of unused dynamic alarms in the indicated address. If *pint* contains a null pointer (`((int *)0)`), the service ignores the parameter. If the Alarm object class properties do not include the *Dynamics* attribute, the service stores a value of zero (0) at the address contained in *pint*.

Example 2-13 on page 44 shows the organization of the `KCLASSPROP` structure.

The attributes element of the Alarm `KCLASSPROP` structure supports the class property attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 7-1.

**Table 7-1.** Alarm Class Attributes and Masks

Attribute	Mask
Static Names	ATTR_STATIC_NAMES
Dynamics	ATTR_DYNAMICS
Semaphores	ATTR_SEMAPHORES

## Output

If successful, this service returns a pointer to a `KCLASSPROP` structure.

If the Alarm class is not initialized, the service returns a null pointer ((KCLASSPROP \*)0).

## Example

Example 7-12 accesses the information contained in the KCLASSPROP structure for the Alarm object class.

### Example 7-12. Read Alarm Object Class Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

KCLASSPROP *palarmclassprop;
int free_dyn;

/* Get the Alarm kernel object class properties */
if ((palarmclassprop = KS_GetAlarmClassProp (&free_dyn))
    == (KCLASSPROP *)0)
{
    putline ("Alarm Class not initialized");
}
else
{
    ... alarm object class info is available for use
    "free_dyn" contains the number of available dynamic alarms
}
```

---

## See Also

XX\_GetAlarmTicks, page 254

## KS\_GetAlarmName

Get the name of a alarm.

### Synopsis

```
char * KS_GetAlarmName (ALARM alarm)
```

### Input

*alarm*        The handle of the alarm being queried.

### Description

The KS\_GetAlarmName kernel service obtains a pointer to the null-terminated string containing the name of the specified static or dynamic *alarm*.

### Output

If *alarm* has a name, this service returns a pointer to the null-terminated name string.

If *alarm* has no name, the service returns a null pointer ((char \*)0).

### Error

This service may generate the following fatal error code:  
FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM if the specified alarm ID is not valid.

### Example

Example 7-13 reports the name of the dynamic alarm specified in dynalarm.

#### Example 7-13. Read Alarm Name

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"         /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

static char buf[128];
ALARM dynalarm;
char *pname;

if ((pname = KS_GetAlarmName (dynalarm)) == (char *)0)
    sprintf (buf, "Alarm %d has no name", dynalarm);
else
    sprintf (buf, "Alarm %d name is %s", dynalarm, pname);

putline (buf); /* send buffer to console */
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_DefAlarmName, page 240

KS\_OpenAlarm, page 258

# XX\_GetAlarmProp

Get the properties of a alarm.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetAlarmProp
- 3** KS\_GetAlarmProp

## Synopsis

```
void XX_GetAlarmProp (ALARM alarm,  
                     ALARMPROP *palarmprop)
```

## Inputs

- alarm*            The handle of the alarm being queried.
- palarmprop*      A pointer to a Alarm properties structure.

## Description

The `XX_GetAlarmProp` kernel service obtains all of the property values of the specified *alarm* in a single call. The service stores the property values in the `ALARMPROP` structure pointed to by *palarmprop*.

Example 7-9 on page 242 shows the organization of the `ALARMPROP` structure.

The alarm attributes value is reserved for future use. The *counter* property specifies the counter the system uses to determine alarm expiration. The alarm's initial ticks value is specified in *initial*. The cyclic value is specified in *recycle*.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_ALARM` if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_ALARM` if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.

## Example

Example 7-14 on page 251 changes the cyclic period value of the dynamic alarm specified in `dynalarm` to 150 ms. The task first obtains the alarm's current properties then modifies the cyclic period element in the `ALARMPROP` structure. `XX_DefAlarmProp` is then used to redefine the properties of the alarm.



**Example 7-14.** Read Alarm Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kproject.h"         /* defines CLKTICK */

ALARM dynalarm;
static ALARMPROP alarmprop;

/* get the current alarm properties */
KS_GetAlarmProp (dynalarm, &alarmprop);

/* modify just the cyclic period element */
alarmprop.recycle = (TICKS)150/CLKTICK;

/* define the new alarm properties */
KS_DefAlarmProp (dynalarm, &alarmprop);
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_DefAlarmProp, page 242

# KS\_GetAlarmSema

Get the handle of the semaphore associated with a alarm event.

## Synopsis

```
SEMA KS_GetAlarmSema (ALARM alarm, AEVENT event)
```

## Inputs

*alarm*            The handle of the alarm being queried.

*event*            A alarm event value.

## Description

The KS\_GetAlarmSema kernel service obtains the handle of the semaphore associated with the alarm event for the specified static or dynamic *alarm*. The two possible alarm events are Alarm\_Expired (AE) or Alarm\_Aborted (AA) and the value of *event* must be either AE or AA.

You must have previously associated the semaphore and the alarm event through a call to KS\_DefAlarmSema.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the Semaphores attribute of the Alarm class during system generation.

---

## Output

If the alarm event and semaphore association exists, this service returns the handle of the semaphore as a SEMA type value.

If there is no such association for the alarm event, the service returns a SEMA value of zero (0).

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_ALARM if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ FE\_INVALID\_ALARMEVENT if the specified semaphore event value is not either AE or AA.

## Example

In Example 7-15 on page 253, the Current Task needs to know the handle of the semaphore associated with the specified alarm so it can

initialize the semalist semaphore list for use in a multiple event wait kernel service request.

### Example 7-15. Read Alarm Semaphore

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"      /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "ksema.h"        /* defines SEMA2, SEMA3 */

ALARM alarm;
SEMA cause;
static SEMA semalist[] =
{
    (SEMA)0,      /* to be filled in below */
    SEMA2,
    SEMA3,
    (SEMA)0;      /* null terminated list */
};
semalist[0] = KS_GetAlarmSema (alarm, AE);

/* got sema handle, wait on events */
cause = KS_TestSemaMW (semalist);
switch (cause)
{
    case SEMA2:          /* test for SEMA2 */
        ... handle this case
        break;
    case SEMA3:          /* test for SEMA3 */
        ... handle this case
        break;
    default:             /* test for alarm expired */
        /* has to be this way because case arg must be a constant */
        if (cause == semalist[0])
        {
            ... handle this case
        }
        break;
}
... continue
```

---

### See Also

KS\_DefAlarmSema, page 244

# XX\_GetAlarmTicks

Get the number of counter ticks remaining until the expiration of an active alarm.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_AbortAlarm
- 3** KS\_AbortAlarm

## Synopsis

TICKS XX\_GetAlarmTicks (ALARM alarm)

## Input

*alarm*      The handle of the alarm being queried.

## Description

The XX\_GetAlarmTicks service obtains the number of counter ticks remaining on the specified *alarm* until it expires. The alarm must be active. This service does not affect the operation of the alarm.

## Output

If *alarm* is active, this service returns a value of type TICKS containing the number of ticks remaining on the alarm.

If *alarm* is inactive, the service returns a TICKS value of zero (0).

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_ALARM if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.

## Example

In Example 7-16 on page 255, the Current Task needs to know how many ticks the static alarm, ALARM1 , has to go before it expires.

**Example 7-16.** Read Number of Counter Ticks Remaining on Alarm

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kalarm.h"          /* defines ALARM1 */

TICKS residual;

residual = KS_GetAlarmTicks (ALARM1);

...do something with the residual counter tick value

... continue
```

---

**See Also**

KS\_DefAlarmSema, page 244

# KS\_LookupAlarm

Look up a alarm's name to get its handle.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_LookupAlarm (const char *pname,  
                     ALARM *palarm)
```

## Inputs

*pname*        A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*palarm*       A pointer to a variable in which to store the matching alarm's handle.

## Description

The KS\_LookupAlarm kernel service obtains the handle of a static or dynamic alarm whose name matches the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*. The lookup process terminates when it finds a match between the specified string and a static or dynamic alarm name or when it finds no match. The service also stores the matching alarm's handle in the variable pointed to by *palarm*. The service searches dynamic names, if any, first.



---

**Note:** To use this service on a static alarm, you must enable the Static Names attribute of the Alarm class during system generation.

This service has no effect on the use registration of the specified alarm by the Current Task.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of alarm names in use.

---

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the search succeeds. The service also stores the matching alarm's handle in the variable pointed to by *palarm*.
- ▶ RC\_OBJECT\_NOT\_FOUND if the service finds no matching alarm name.

## Example

Example 7-17 looks for the dynamic alarm named Chnl2Alarm. If the alarm is found, the example sends its handle to the console.

### Example 7-17. Look Up Alarm by Name

---

```
#include <stdio.h>          /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"         /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

static char buf[128];       /* output buffer */

ALARM dynalarm;

/* lookup the semaphore name to see if it exists */
if (KS_LookupAlarm ("Chnl2Alarm", &dynalarm) != RC_GOOD)
{
    putline ("Alarm Chnl2Alarm not found");
}
else
{
    /* alarm exists, output its handle */
    sprintf (buf, "Chnl2Alarm is alarm %d", dynalarm);
    putline (buf);
}
... continue
```

---

## See Also

KS\_DefAlarmName, page 240  
KS\_OpenAlarm, page 258

# KS\_OpenAlarm

Allocate and name a dynamic alarm.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_OpenAlarm (const char *pname, ALARM *palarm)
```

## Inputs

*pname*        A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*palarm*       A pointer to a variable in which to store the allocated alarm's handle.

## Description

If a dynamic alarm is available and no existing alarm, static or dynamic, has a name matching the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname*, the `KS_OpenAlarm` kernel service allocates a dynamic alarm and applies the name to the new alarm. The kernel stores only the address of the name internally, which means that the same array cannot be used to build multiple dynamic alarm names. The service stores the alarm's handle in the variable pointed to by *palarm*.

If *pname* is a null pointer (`((char *)0)`), the service does not assign a name to the dynamic alarm. However, if *pname* points to a null string, the name is legal as long as no other alarm is already using a null string as its name.

If the service finds an existing alarm with a matching name, it does not open a new alarm and returns a value indicating the failure.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the Dynamics attribute of the Alarm class during system generation.

If the pointer to the alarm name is not null (`((char *)0)`), the time required to perform this operation is determined by the number of alarm names in use. If the pointer to the alarm name is null, no search of alarm names takes place and the time to perform the service is fixed. You can define the alarm name at a later time with a call to the `KS_DefAlarmName` service.

---



## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service completes successfully. The service stores the handle of the new dynamic alarm in the variable pointed to by *palarm*.
- ▶ RC\_OBJECT\_ALREADY\_EXISTS if the name search finds another alarm whose name matches the given string.
- ▶ RC\_NO\_OBJECT\_AVAILABLE if the name search finds no match but all dynamic alarms are in use.

## Example

Example 7-18 allocates a dynamic alarm and names it MuxChnl2Alarm. If the name is found to be in use or if there are no dynamic alarms available, the example sends an appropriate message to the console.

### Example 7-18. Allocate and Name Alarm

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */

KSRC ksrc;
ALARM dynalarm;

if ((ksrc = KS_OpenAlarm ("MuxChnl2Alarm", &dynalarm))
    != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_OBJECT_ALREADY_EXISTS)
        putline ("MuxChnl2Alarm alarm name in use");
    else if (ksrc == RC_NO_OBJECT_AVAILABLE)
        putline ("No dynamic alarms available");
    else
        putline ("Alarms are not a defined object class");
}
else
{
    ... alarm was opened correctly. Okay to use it now
}
```

---

## See Also

XX\_ArmAlarm, page 230  
KS\_LookupAlarm, page 256  
KS\_UseAlarm, page 270

# XX\_RearmAlarm

Rearm and restart an active alarm.

## Zone

- 2** TS\_RearmAlarm
- 3** KS\_RearmAlarm

## Synopsis

```
TICKS XX_RearmAlarm (ALARM alarm, TICKS newinitial,  
                    TICKS newcycle)
```

## Inputs

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| <i>alarm</i>      | The handle of the alarm to be rearmed and restarted.                             |
| <i>newinitial</i> | A value of type TICKS to be used as the new initial tick interval for the alarm. |
| <i>newcycle</i>   | A value of type TICKS to be used as the new recycle tick interval for the alarm. |

## Description

The `XX_RearmAlarm` kernel service changes the initial period, cyclic period, or both, of the specified *alarm*. If the alarm is inactive, this service is equivalent to a call to `XX_DefAlarmProp` followed by a call to `XX_ArmAlarm`. If the alarm is active when this request is made, the service disarms and stops the alarm and then rearms and restarts it with the new properties given by *newinitial* and *newcycle*. If the alarm is active, the service returns the number of counter ticks remaining on the alarm at the point of its disarming.

This service does not change the status of any task waiting for the expiration of the alarm or on either of the alarm event semaphores.

## Output

If the alarm is active, this service returns the number of counter ticks remaining on the alarm when the service is called.

If the alarm is inactive, the service returns zero (0).

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_ALARM` if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_ALARM` if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.

## Example

Example 7-19 illustrates a re-triggerable watchdog alarm where the Current Task, having previously opened a dynamic alarm, uses it with the `TIMEBASE` counter as a 250-msec one-shot alarm. When the task completes its processing, it rearms and restarts the alarm with the same initial period duration. Presumably, some other task is waiting on the expiration event should it occur.

### Example 7-19. Rearm and Restart Alarm from Zone 3

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"           /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kproject.h"          /* defines CLKTICK */

ALARM dynalarm;
static ALARMPROP alarmprop;

/* allocate a dynamic alarm for WDT, (name not important) */
if (KS_OpenAlarm ((char *)0, &dynalarm) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... Deal with failure to open alarm
}

/* define the properties for a 250 msec one shot alarm */
alarmprop.attributes = 0;
alarmprop.counter = TIMEBASE;
alarmprop.initial = (TICKS)250/CLKTICK;
alarmprop.recycle = (TICKS)0;
KS_DefAlarmProp (dynalarm, &alarmprop);

/* start the alarm
if (KS_ArmAlarm (dynalarm) == RC_GOOD)
{
    ... WDT started. Do some processing
}

/* then restart the WDT as a 250 msec one-shot */
if (KS_RearmAlarm (dynalarm, (TICKS)250/CLKTICK, (TICKS)0) ==
    (TICKS)0)
{
    ...alarm had expired, may need to deal with that
}
else
    ...alarm not expired. Continue processing
```

---

## See Also

XX\_AbortAlarm, page 226  
XX\_DefAlarmProp, page 242  
XX\_ArmAlarm, page 230

# KS\_TestAlarm

Get the time, in ticks, remaining on an active alarm.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_TestAlarm (ALARM alarm, TICKS *pticks)
```

## Inputs

<i>alarm</i>	The handle of the alarm being tested.
<i>pticks</i>	A pointer to a variable in which to store the number of ticks remaining on the alarm.

## Description

The KS\_TestAlarm kernel service tests the specified *alarm* and obtains the time remaining on it if it is active. The service puts the time remaining into the variable pointed to by *pticks*.

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the alarm is active.
- ▶ RC\_ALARM\_INACTIVE if the alarm is not active.

If *alarm* is active and *pticks* is not null ((TICKS \*)0), the service returns the number of ticks remaining on the alarm in the variable pointed to by *pticks*.

If *alarm* is not active and *pticks* is not null ((TICKS \*)0), the service stores a value of zero (0) in the variable pointed to by *pticks*.

If *pticks* is null, the service ignores it and does not use it as a destination pointer.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_ALARM if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.

## Example

Example 7-20 on page 263 opens a dynamic alarm and defines the properties for a 500-msec, one-shot alarm. The task then associates the TMRSEMA semaphore with the expiration of the alarm and waits on TMRSEMA and another event associated with the INTSEMA

semaphore. When either event occurs, the task tests the alarm and loads the remainder variable with the time remaining on the alarm. If the event associated with INTSEMA occurs, the task obtains the remaining time and stops the alarm. If the event was the alarm expiration, the value of remainder is zero (0).

### Example 7-20. Test Alarm

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kproject.h"         /* defines CLKTICK */
#include "ksema.h"            /* defines INTSEMA & TMRSEMA */

ALARM dynalarm;
static ALARMPROP alarmprop;
TICKS remainder;
SEMA sema;
const SEMA semalist[] = { INTSEMA, TMRSEMA, (SEMA)0 };

/* allocate a dynamic alarm, name is unimportant */
if (KS_OpenAlarm ((char *)0, &dynalarm) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... no alarms available if here
}
/* define the properties for a 500 msec one-shot alarm */
alarmprop.attributes = 0;
alarmprop.counter = TIMEBASE;
alarmprop.initial = (TICKS)500/CLKTICK;
alarmprop.cycle = (TICKS)0;
KS_DefAlarmProp (dynalarm, &alarmprop);

/* associate semaphore TMRSEMA with alarm expiration */
KS_DefAlarmSema (dynalarm, TMRSEMA);

/* start the allocated alarm and wait for the event or the alarm */
KS_ArmAlarm (dynalarm);
KS_TestSemaMW (semalist); /* disregard the returned sema */

/* test alarm to see if INTSEMA event occurred*/
if (KS_TestAlarm (dynalarm, &remainder) == RC_GOOD)
    KS_AbortAlarm (dynalarm); /* stop the alarm */
/* otherwise, alarm elapsed before event occurred

/* at this point both semaphores are back in a PENDING */
/* state and the alarm is in an INACTIVE state. */

... now do something with the remaining time
```

---

## See Also

XX\_AbortAlarm, page 226  
XX\_DefAlarmProp, page 242  
KS\_DefAlarmSema, page 244  
KS\_OpenAlarm, page 258  
XX\_ArmAlarm, page 230

# KS\_TestAlarmT

Wait a specified number of ticks for an alarm to expire.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_TestAlarmT (ALARM alarm, TICKS *pticks,  
                    COUNTER counter, TICKS tickout)
```

## Inputs

<i>alarm</i>	The handle of the alarm being tested.
<i>pticks</i>	A pointer to a variable in which to store the number of ticks remaining on the alarm being tested.
<i>counter</i>	The handle of a counter to use for the internal alarm of duration ticks.
<i>tickout</i>	The number of ticks for the internal alarm on counter to wait for the expiration of the alarm being tested.

## Description

The `KS_TestAlarmT` service waits for the expiration of the specified active *alarm*. When the service determines that *alarm* is active, the service starts an internal tickout alarm for the duration specified in *tickout* on the specified *counter*, and then blocks the Current Task. If *pticks* is not null (`(TICKS *)0`), the service returns the number of ticks remaining on the alarm in the variable pointed to by *pticks* when the task resumes.

The Current Task remains blocked until one of three events occurs.

- ▶ The alarm being tested expires.
- ▶ The specified number of ticks elapses.
- ▶ The alarm being tested is aborted.

When an alarm is armed, it may be aborted by another task. If so, the internal tickout alarm is stopped and the task waiting on the alarm being tested resumes and the `KS_TestAlarmT` service returns an indicator that the alarm was aborted.

## Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the specified alarm being tested expires before the internal alarm expires. The service stores the number of ticks

remaining on the alarm as a value of zero (0) at the address in `pticks`.

- ▶ `RC_ALARM_INACTIVE` if the specified alarm is not active when the service is called. In this case, the service returns immediately. The service returns a value of zero (0) for the remaining number of ticks on the alarm
- ▶ `RC_ALARM_ABORTED` if another task aborts the alarm being tested through the use of `XX_AbortAlarm` before the internal alarm expires. If so, the service stores, in the variable pointed to by `pticks`, the number of ticks remaining on the alarm being tested.
- ▶ `RC_TICKOUT` if the specified number of ticks elapses before the expiration of the specified alarm. In this case, the service returns the number of ticks remaining on the specified alarm at the address pointed to by `pticks`.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_ALARM` if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_ALARM` if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.
- ▶ `FE_ILLEGAL_COUNTER` if the specified counter ID is not valid.
- ▶ `FE_UNINITIALIZED_COUNTER` if the specified counter has not yet been initialized.

## Example

Example 7-21 on page 267 needs to synchronize with static alarm, `ALARM1`, started by another task, but sets up an internal tickout alarm of 50 msec to achieve synchronization. If the internal tickout alarm occurs before synchronizing with `ALARM1`, the task tries to sync up again. If `ALARM1` is inactive or is aborted, the task takes special action.



**Example 7-21. Test Alarm—Wait Number of Ticks for Expiration**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kproject.h"         /* defines CLKTICK */
#include "kalarm.h"           /* defines ALARM1 */

KSRC retcode;

/* wait 50 msec for alarm to expire*/
while ((retcode = KS_TestAlarmT (ALARM1, (TICKS *)0, TIMEBASE,
    (TICKS)50/CLKTICK)) == RC_TICKOUT)
{
    ... No sync yet because timeout occurred.
    Do something useful
}

if (retcode != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... Either alarm was inactive or was aborted.
    Deal with it
}
else
{
    ... Alarm expired, Current Task is now in synch
    with ALARM1
}
```

---

**See Also**            [XX\\_AbortAlarm, page 226](#)  
                     [XX\\_ArmAlarm, page 230](#)

# KS\_TestAlarmW

Wait for a alarm to expire.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_TestAlarmW (ALARM alarm, TICKS *pticks)
```

## Inputs

<i>alarm</i>	The handle of the alarm being tested.
<i>pticks</i>	A pointer to a variable in which to store the number of ticks remaining on the alarm if aborted by another task or thread.

## Description

The KS\_TestAlarmW service waits for the expiration of the specified active *alarm*. The service blocks the requesting task until the expiration of the specified alarm. However, another task or thread may stop the alarm through the use of XX\_CancelAlarm or XX\_AbortAlarm and cause a premature resumption of the waiting task. In this case, the service stores the number of ticks remaining on the alarm at the point of being stopped in the variable pointed to by *pticks*, if *pticks* is not null ((TICKS \*)0). If *pticks* is null, the service does not return the number of remaining ticks.

## Output

This service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the alarm expires normally. The service returns zero (0) for the remaining ticks in the variable pointed to by *pticks*.
- ▶ RC\_ALARM\_INACTIVE if the alarm is inactive at the time of the service request. The service does not block the calling task and returns immediately, storing a value of zero (0) in the variable pointed to by *pticks*.
- ▶ RC\_ALARM\_ABORTED if another task aborts the alarm through the use of the XX\_AbortAlarm kernel service. If this occurs, the number of ticks remaining on the alarm when aborted is stored in the variable pointed to by *pticks*.
- ▶ RC\_ALARM\_CANCELLED if another task stops the alarm through the use of the XX\_CancelAlarm kernel service. If this occurs, the service stores the number of ticks remaining on the alarm when aborted in the variable pointed to by *pticks*.

## Errors

This service may generate one of the following fatal error codes:

- ▶ FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM if the specified alarm ID is not valid.
- ▶ FE\_UNINITIALIZED\_ALARM if the specified alarm has not yet been initialized.

## Example

Example 7-22 needs to generate a report periodically. It opens a dynamic alarm, defines the properties for a cyclic alarm, and starts the alarm using counter `TIMEBASE`. The report period is 30 seconds and the report is generated each time the alarm expires.

### Example 7-22. Test Alarm—Wait for Expiration

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kproject.h"         /* defines CLKTICK */

ALARM dynalarm;
static ALARMPROP alarmprop;

/* open a dynamic alarm, name is unimportant */
if (KS_OpenAlarm ((char *)0, &dynalarm) != RC_GOOD)
{
    ... no alarms available. Deal with it here
}

/* define the properties for a 30 second cyclic alarm */
alarmprop.attributes = 0;
alarmprop.counter = TIMEBASE;
alarmprop.initial = (TICKS)30000/CLKTICK;
alarmprop.cycle = (TICKS)30000/CLKTICK;
KS_DefAlarmProp (dynalarm, &alarmprop);

/* start the alarm
KS_ArmAlarm (dynalarm);

for (;;)
{
    /* wait for the report period */
    KS_TestAlarmW (dynalarm, (TICKS *)0);

    ...generate periodic report
}
```

---

## See Also

XX\_AbortAlarm, page 226  
XX\_ArmAlarm, page 230

## KS\_UseAlarm

Look up a dynamic alarm by name and mark it for use.

### Synopsis

```
KSRC KS_UseAlarm (const char *pname, ALARM *palarm)
```

### Inputs

*pname*        A pointer to a null-terminated name string.

*palarm*       A pointer to a variable in which to store the matching alarm's handle.

### Description

The `KS_UseAlarm` kernel service acquires the handle of a dynamic alarm by looking up the null-terminated string pointed to by *pname* in the list of alarm names. If there is a match, the service registers the alarm for future use by the Current Task and stores the matching alarm's handle in the variable pointed to by *palarm*. This procedure allows the Current Task to reference the dynamic alarm successfully in subsequent kernel service calls.



---

**Note:** To use this service, you must enable the Dynamics attribute of the Alarm class during system generation.

The time required to perform this operation varies with the number of alarm names in use.

---

### Output

This service returns a `KSRC` value as follows:

- ▶ `RC_GOOD` if the search is successful. The service stores the matching alarm's handle in the variable pointed to by *palarm*.
- ▶ `RC_STATIC_OBJECT` if the given name belongs to a static alarm.
- ▶ `RC_OBJECT_NOT_FOUND` if the service finds no matching name.

### Example

Example 7-23 on page 271 locates a dynamic alarm named `DynMuxAlarm3` and obtains its handle. After the handle is known, the task starts the alarm as a one-shot having an initial period duration of 500 milliseconds. The task sends a message to the console indicating the action taken.

**Example 7-23. Read Alarm Handle and Register It**

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Service prototypes */
#include "kproject.h"         /* defines CLKTICK */

KSRC ksrc;
ALARM dynalarm;
static ALARMPROP alarmprop;

if ((ksrc = KS_UseAlarm ("DynMuxAlarm3", &dynalarm)) != RC_GOOD)
{
    if (ksrc == RC_STATIC_OBJECT)
        putline ("DynMuxAlarm3 is a static alarm");
    else
        putline ("Alarm DynMuxAlarm3 not found");
}
else
{
    /* alarm was found and its handle is in dynalarm */.
    if (KS_TestAlarm (dynalarm, (TICKS *)0) != RC_GOOD)
    {
        /* alarm is not active, ok to use it */
        /* define the properties for a 500 msec alarm */
        alarmprop.attribute = 0;
        alarmprop.counter = TIMEBASE;
        alarmprop.initial = (TICKS)500/CLKTICK;
        alarmprop.cycle = (TICKS)0;
        KS_DefAlarmProp (dynalarm, &alarmprop);

        /* now start the alarm */
        KS_ArmAlarm (dynalarm);
        putline ("Alarm DynMuxAlarm3 is started");
        ... alarm started, do whatever is required
    }
    else
    {
        putline ("Alarm DynMuxAlarm3 is already active");
        ... alarm was already active, deal with that here
    }
}
}
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_DefAlarmProp, page 242  
KS\_DefAlarmName, page 240  
KS\_OpenAlarm, page 258  
KS\_TestAlarm, page 262



# CHAPTER 8 Special Services

---

## In This Chapter

We describe the Special kernel services in detail. The Special services provide for user-defined extensions to the **RTXC** Kernel.

<b>XX_AllocSysRAM .....</b>	<b>274</b>
<b>XX_DefFatalErrorHandler .....</b>	<b>276</b>
<b>XX_GetFatalErrorHandler .....</b>	<b>278</b>
<b>XX_GetFreeSysRAMSize .....</b>	<b>279</b>
<b>KS_GetSysProp.....</b>	<b>280</b>
<b>KS_GetVersion .....</b>	<b>282</b>
<b>INIT_SysProp .....</b>	<b>284</b>

# XX\_AllocSysRAM

Allocate a block of system RAM.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_AllocSysRAM
- 3** KS\_AllocSysRAM

## Synopsis

```
void * XX_AllocSysRAM (ksize_t blksize)
```

## Input

*blksize*      The size in bytes of the block of RAM to allocate.

## Description

The `XX_AllocSysRAM` kernel service allocates a block of system RAM of size *blksize*. You define the amount of system RAM available to the kernel during the kernel generation process (that is, in the **RTXCgen** program). The kernel uses this RAM during **RTXC** Kernel initialization processing for its internal tables. The kernel keeps track of the amount of this RAM it needs and allows you to allocate any extra RAM from this area of memory.



---

**Note:** The **RTXC** Kernel provides no inverse function to release RAM allocated by this function.

---

## Output

If successful, this service returns a pointer to the first address of the allocated block.

If the size of the requested block exceeds the amount of available system RAM, the service returns a null pointer (`((void *)0)`).

## Example

In Example 8-1 on page 275, the application needs a 256-byte block of system RAM. If the allocation is successful, the pointer to the block is to be stored in the *p* pointer. If there is not enough free RAM available, the task must take the appropriate action.



**Example 8-1.** Allocate System RAM from Zone 3

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

void *p;

if ((p = KS_AllocSysRAM (256)) == (void *)0)
{
    ... Deal with no memory available
}
else
{
    ... Allocation was successful
}
```

---

# XX\_DefFatalErrorHandler

Establish the system error function.

## Zones

**2** TS\_DefFatalErrorHandler  
**3** KS\_DefFatalErrorHandler

## Synopsis

```
void XX_DefFatalErrorHandler  
    (int (*errfunc) (void *))
```

## Input

*errfunc*      The entry address for the error function.

## Description

The `XX_DefFatalErrorHandler` kernel service establishes a function to which the **RTXC** Kernel branches upon detection of a fatal error. The *errfunc* argument specifies the entry address for the error function.

## Output

This service does not return a value.

## Example

Example 8-2 on page 277 defines the `kerror` function for receiving all fatal **RTXC** Kernel usage errors. The specified error function requires two arguments as shown in the example: the handle of the Current Task at the time of the error, *task*, and a pointer to that task's interrupt stack frame, *pinfo*. The error function returns an `int` type value. If the returned value is non-zero, the **RTXC** Kernel aborts the Current Task. The kernel ignores the error if the returned value is zero (0).

**Example 8-2.** Define Fatal Error Function

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

void fehandler (FEPACKET *fepacket); /* prototype for Error Handler */

KS_DefFatalErrorHandler (fehandler); /* define error handler function
*/
... continue

/* System Error Handler for Fatal RTXC Usage */
void fehandler (FEPACKET *fepacket)
{
    ...Do what has to be done here: display the point of error,
        kill the system, whatever is suitable to the application
    return (1); /* have RTXC abort Current Task */
}
```

---

**See Also**

XX\_GetFatalErrorHandler, page 278

# XX\_GetFatalErrorHandler

Get the system error function.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetFatalErrorHandler
- 3** KS\_GetFatalErrorHandler

## Synopsis

```
int (*)(void *) XX_GetFatalErrorHandler (void)
```

## Inputs

This service has no inputs.

## Description

The XX\_GetFatalErrorHandler kernel service returns a pointer to the function registered to handle fatal system conditions by a previous XX\_DefFatalErrorHandler call.

## Output

The service returns a pointer to the error function installed by a previous call to XX\_DefFatalErrorHandler.

If no error function has been installed, the kernel service returns a null function pointer ((int (\*)(void \*)) 0).

## Example

Example 8-3 needs to know if an error function has been defined. If not, XX\_DefFatalErrorHandler is used to establish kerror, a function external to the Current Task, as the system error handler.

### Example 8-3. Read Fatal Error Function

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

extern void fehandler (FEPACKET *fepacket);

if (KS_GetFatalErrorHandler () == (void (*)(FEPACKET *fepacket))0)
    KS_DefFatalErrorHandler (fehandler);

...Error handler is now in place, continue
```

---

## See Also

XX\_DefFatalErrorHandler, page 276

# XX\_GetFreeSysRAMSize

Get the size of free system RAM.

## Zones

- 2** TS\_GetFreeSysRAMSize
- 3** KS\_GetFreeSysRAMSize

## Synopsis

ksize\_t XX\_GetFreeSysRAMSize (void)

## Inputs

This service has no inputs.

## Description

The XX\_GetFreeSysRAMSize kernel service determines the amount of free system RAM that is available to the user.

## Output

The service returns the number of remaining free bytes of system RAM.

## Example

The task in Example 8-4 needs to allocate 2000 bytes of system RAM. It obtains the amount of available system RAM and prints a message if there is less than 2000 bytes.

### Example 8-4. Read Amount of Available System RAM from Zone 3

---

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include "rtxcapi.h"      /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

static char buffer[128];
ksize_t freeRAM;

if ((freeRAM = KS_GetFreeSysRAMSize ()) < 2000)
{
    sprintf (buf, "Only %d free bytes of System RAM", freeRAM);
    putline (buf);
}
else
{
    ... enough RAM available, continue initialization
}
```

---

## See Also

XX\_AllocSysRAM, page 274

# KS\_GetSysProp

Get the system properties.

## Synopsis

```
const SYSPROP * KS_GetSysProp (void)
```

## Inputs

This service has no inputs.

## Description

The `KS_GetSysProp` kernel service returns a pointer to a `SYSPROP` structure containing the system properties used to initialize the system through the `INIT_SysProp` service.

Example 8-5 shows the organization of the `SYSPROP` structure.

### Example 8-5. System Properties Structure

---

```
typedef struct
{
    KATTR attributes;           /* system attributes */
    unsigned long version;      /* kernel version number */
    char *sysrambase;           /* base address of system RAM */
    ksize_t sysramsize;         /* size (bytes) of system RAM */
    char *kernelstackbase;      /* base address of kernel stack */
    ksize_t kernelstacksize;    /* size (bytes) of kernel stack */
    unsigned long reserve1;      /* reserved */
    unsigned long reserve2;      /* reserved */
} SYSPROP;
```

---

## Output

The function always returns a pointer to a `SYSPROP` structure.

## Example

Example 8-6 reads the clock rate that was established when the system was initialized and sends it to the console.

### Example 8-6. Read System Properties

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */
static char buf[128];
SYSPROP *psysprop = KS_GetSysProp ();

putline (buf);
... continue
```

---

**See Also**

INIT\_SysProp, page 284

# KS\_GetVersion

Get the version number of the **RTXC** Kernel.

## Synopsis

`unsigned long KS_GetVersion (void)`

## Inputs

This service has no inputs.

## Description

The `KS_GetVersion` kernel service returns the version number of the **RTXC** Kernel.

## Output

The function returns a value that contains the version number formatted as follows:

<b>Bits 31–16</b>	System Use
<b>Bits 15–08</b>	Version number (hexadecimal)
<b>Bits 07–00</b>	Release number (hexadecimal)



**Note:** The developer defines bits 31 through 16 during system generation. This bit field is the developer’s version number for the application.

## Example

Example 8-7 on page 283 obtains the **RTXC** Kernel version number and displays it on the console.



**Example 8-7. Read Version Number**

---

```
#include <stdio.h>           /* standard i/o */
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC Kernel Services prototypes */

static char buf[128];
union RTXCver
{
    unsigned long version;
    struct {
        unsigned short sysnum; /* reserved for system use */
        unsigned char ver;     /* version number */
        unsigned char rel;     /* release number */
    } vr;
} curVR;

curVR.version = KS_GetVersion (); /* get RTXC version */
sprintf (buf, "Current RTXC version.release is %d.%d",
        curVR.vr.ver, curVR.vr.rel);
putline (buf); /* display version # */

... continue
```

---

# INIT\_SysProp

Initialize the RTXC system properties.

## Synopsis

```
KSRC INIT_SysProp (const SYSPROP *psysprop)
```

## Input

*psysprop*      A pointer to a SYSPROP structure.

## Description

The `INIT_SysProp` service performs the required initialization procedure and must be called before any other RTXC kernel service or system function. It passes the system properties, as defined by the user during system generation and found in the `SYSPROP` structure pointed to by *psysprop*, to the kernel. The system properties specify information about how the RTXC Kernel is to operate.

Example 8-5 on page 280 shows the organization of the `SYSPROP` structure.

The system attributes specify the object classes that are defined for the application. The attributes element of the `SYSPROP` structure supports the attributes and corresponding masks listed in Table 8-1.

**Table 8-1.** System Attributes and Masks

Attribute	Mask
Tasks	K_ATTR_TASKS
Threads	K_ATTR_THREADS
Semaphores	K_ATTR_SEMAPHORES
Queues	K_ATTR_QUEUES
Mailboxes	K_ATTR_MAILBOXES
Partitions	K_ATTR_PARTITIONS
Pipes	K_ATTR_PIPES

**Table 8-1.** System Attributes and Masks (*continued*)

Attribute	Mask
Mutexes	K_ATTR_MUTEXES
Event Sources	K_ATTR_SOURCES
Counters	K_ATTR_COUNTERS
Alarms	K_ATTR_ALARMS
Exceptions	K_ATTR_EXCEPTIONS

## Output

The service returns a KSRC value as follows:

- ▶ RC\_GOOD if the service completes successfully.
- ▶ RC\_VERSION\_MISMATCH if the version number passed in the SYSPROP structure is different from the version stored within the RTXC Kernel.

## Example

During system initialization, the startup code must initialize the kernel properties before initializing the needed kernel object classes. The system generation process produces a structure of type SYSPROP that contains the information about the system necessary for its initialization. Example 8-8 on page 286 externally references that structure and outputs any error messages to the console.

### Example 8-8. Initialize Kernel Properties

---

```
#include "rtxcapi.h"          /* RTXC KC prototypes */

extern const SYSPROP sysprop;

KSRC userinit (void)
{
    KSRC ksrc;
    static char buf[128];

    /* initialize the system properties

    if ((ksrc = INIT_SysProp (&sysprop)) != RC_GOOD)
    {
        putline ("Kernel initialization failure\n");
        return ksrc; /* end initialization process */
    }
    /* kernel is initialized */

    /* Proceed now with init of kernel object classes */
... Continue with system initialization
}
```

---

**See Also**                      [KS\\_GetSysProp](#), page 280

## APPENDIX I Fatal Error Codes

---

This appendix lists the fatal error codes returned by **RTXC/ss** kernel services.

### F

#### FE\_ILLEGAL\_ALARM

The specified alarm ID is not valid.

KS\_CloseAlarm 234

KS\_DefAlarmName 240

KS\_GetAlarmName 248

KS\_TestAlarm 262

KS\_TestAlarmT 266

KS\_TestAlarmW 269

XX\_AbortAlarm 226

XX\_ArmAlarm 230

XX\_CancelAlarm 232

XX\_DefAlarmAction 237

XX\_DefAlarmActionArm 239

XX\_DefAlarmProp 242

XX\_DefAlarmSema 244

XX\_GetAlarmProp 250

XX\_GetAlarmSema 252

XX\_GetAlarmTicks 254

XX\_RearmAlarm 260

#### FE\_ILLEGAL\_COUNTER

The specified counter ID is not valid.

KS\_CloseCounter 192

KS\_DefCounterName 196

KS\_GetCounterName 206

KS\_GetElapsedCounterTicks 211

KS\_TestAlarmT 266

XX\_ClearCounterAttrib 190

XX\_DefAlarmProp 242

XX\_DefCounterProp 200

XX\_GetCounterAcc 202

XX\_GetCounterProp 208

XX\_SetCounterAcc 218

XX\_SetCounterAttrib 220

#### FE\_ILLEGAL\_EVENTSOURCE

The specified event source ID is not valid.

KS\_CloseEventSource 161

KS\_DefEventSourceName 162

KS\_DefEventSourceProp 165

KS\_GetEventSourceName 173

XX\_ClearEventSourceAttr 158

XX\_DefCounterProp 200

XX\_GetEventSourceAcc 169

XX\_GetEventSourceProp 175

XX\_SetEventSourceAcc 183

XX\_SetEventSourceAttr 185

#### FE\_ILLEGAL\_EXCPTN

The specified Exception ID is not valid.

KS\_CloseException 88

KS\_DefExceptionName 90

KS\_DefExceptionProp 92

KS\_GetExceptionName 98

KS\_GetExceptionProp 100

#### FE\_ILLEGAL\_LEVEL

The specified level is not valid.

KS\_RaiseThreadLevel 70

TS\_LowerThreadLevel 64

#### FE\_ILLEGAL\_PIPE

The specified pipe ID is not valid.

---

KS_ClosePipe 110	XX_ORThreadGateBits 67
KS_DefPipeName 118	XX_PresetThreadGate 68
KS_GetPipeName 128	XX_ScheduleThread 73
XX_DefPipeAction 113	XX_ScheduleThreadArg 76
XX_DefPipeProp 116	XX_SetThreadGate 78
XX_GetEmptyPipeBuf 120	XX_SetThreadGatePreset 80
XX_GetFullPipeBuf 122	XX_UnscheduleThread 84
XX_GetPipeBufSize 124	FE_INVALID_ALARM ACTION
XX_GetPipeProp 130	The specified alarm action value is not one of the four possible actions.
XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 133	XX_DefAlarmAction 237
XX_JamFullPipeBuf 136	XX_DefAlarmActionArm 239
XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf 145	FE_INVALID_ALARMEVENT
XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf 147	The specified semaphore event is not AA or AE.
XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 150	KS_DefAlarmSema 245
XX_PutFullPipeBuf 152	KS_GetAlarmSema 252
FE_ILLEGAL_SEMA	FE_INVALID_PIPE ACTION
The specified semaphore ID is invalid.	The specified pipe action value is not one of the four possible actions.
244	XX_DefPipeAction 113
KS_DefAlarmSema 244	FE_INVALID_PIPECOND
FE_ILLEGAL_THREAD	The specified pipe condition value is not either PUTEEMPTY or PUTFULL.
The specified thread ID is not valid.	XX_DefPipeAction 113
KS_DefThreadName 34	FE_NULL_EXCPTNHANDLER
KS_GetThreadName 56	The specified Exception handler address is null.
TS_GetThreadBaseLevel 42	KS_DefExceptionProp 92
XX_ClearThreadGateBits 24	FE_NULL_PIPEBUFFER
XX_DecrThreadGate 26	The specified Pipe buffer address is null.
XX_DefAlarmAction 237	XX_JamFullPipeBuf 137
XX_DefAlarmActionArm 239	XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf 147
XX_DefPipeAction 113	XX_PutFullPipeBuf 153
XX_DefThreadArg 28	FE_NULL_PIPEFREEBASE
XX_DefThreadEntry 30	The specified Pipe free base address is null.
XX_DefThreadEnvArg 32	XX_DefPipeProp 116
XX_DefThreadProp 37	
XX_GetThreadArg 40	
XX_GetThreadEnvArg 49	
XX_GetThreadGate 50	
XX_GetThreadGatePreset 54	
XX_GetThreadProp 59	
XX_IncrThreadGate 61	

---

FE_NULL_PIPEFULLBASE	XX_GetCounterAcc 202
The specified Pipe full base address is null.	XX_GetCounterProp 208
XX_DefPipeProp 116	XX_SetCounterAcc 218
FE_NULL_PIPEPBUFSIZE	XX_SetCounterAttrib 220
The pointer to the buffer size is null.	FE_UNINITIALIZED_EVENTSOURCE
XX_GetFullPipeBuf 122	The specified event source has not yet been initialized.
XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf 145	XX_ClearEventSource 158
FE_NULL_PIPESIZEBASE	XX_GetEventSourceAcc 169
The specified Pipe base size address is null.	XX_GetEventSourceProp 175
XX_DefPipeProp 116	XX_SetEventSourceAcc 183
FE_NULL_THREADENTRY	XX_SetEventSourceAttr 185
The specified Thread entry address is null.	FE_UNINITIALIZED_EXCPTN
XX_DefThreadEntry 30	The specified Exception has not yet been initialized.
XX_DefThreadProp 37	KS_GetExceptionProp 100
FE_UNINITIALIZED_ALARM	FE_UNINITIALIZED_PIPE
The specified alarm has not yet been initialized.	The specified pipe has not yet been initialized.
KS_TestAlarm 262	XX_DefPipeAction 113
KS_TestAlarmT 266	XX_GetEmptyPipeBuf 120
KS_TestAlarmW 269	XX_GetFullPipeBuf 122
XX_AbortAlarm 226	XX_GetPipeBufSize 124
XX_ArmAlarm 230	XX_GetPipeProp 130
XX_CancelAlarm 232	XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 133
XX_DefAlarmAction 237	XX_JamFullPipeBuf 136
XX_DefAlarmActionArm 239	XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf 145
XX_DefAlarmSema 244	XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf 147
XX_GetAlarmProp 250	XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 150
XX_GetAlarmSema 252	XX_PutFullPipeBuf 152
XX_GetAlarmTicks 254	FE_UNINITIALIZED_SEMA
XX_RearmAlarm 260	KS_DefAlarmSema 244
FE_UNINITIALIZED_COUNTER	FE_UNINITIALIZED_THREAD
The specified counter has not yet been initialized.	The specified thread has not yet been initialized.
KS_GetElapsedCounterTicks 211	TS_GetThreadBaseLevel 42
KS_TestAlarmT 266	XX_ClearThreadGateBits 24
XX_ClearCounterAttrib 190	XX_DecrThreadGate 27
	XX_DefAlarmAction 237

---

---

XX\_DefAlarmActionArm 239  
XX\_DefPipeAction 113  
XX\_DefThreadArg 28  
XX\_DefThreadEntry 30  
XX\_DefThreadEnvArg 32  
XX\_GetThreadArg 40  
XX\_GetThreadEnvArg 49  
XX\_GetThreadGate 50  
XX\_GetThreadGatePreset 54  
XX\_GetThreadProp 59  
XX\_IncrThreadGate 61  
XX\_ORThreadGateBits 67  
XX\_PresetThreadGate 68  
XX\_ScheduleThread 73  
XX\_ScheduleThreadArg 76  
XX\_SetThreadGate 78  
XX\_SetThreadGatePreset 80  
XX\_UnscheduleThread 84

FE\_ZERO\_PIPEBUFSIZE  
The buffer size in the specified pipe is zero.  
XX\_DefPipeProp 116  
XX\_JamFullPipeBuf 137  
XX\_PutFullPipeBuf 153

FE\_ZERO\_PIPENUMBUF  
The number of buffers in the specified pipe is zero.  
XX\_DefPipeProp 116



# Index

---

## A

aborting alarm 226

alarm

    aborting 226

*Alarm\_Aborted* event 244, 252

*Alarm\_Expired* event 244, 252

    ALARMPROP structure 242, 250

    allocating 258

    arming 230, 238

    closing 234

    code examples

        Abort Alarm 227

        Allocate and Name Alarm 259

        Arm Alarm 231

        Arm Alarm and Define Alarm

            Expiration Action

            Operation 239

        Cancel Alarm 233

        Close Alarm 235

        Define Alarm End Action

            Operation 237

        Define Alarm Name 241

        Define Alarm Properties 243

        Define Alarm Semaphore 245

        Initialize Alarm Object Class 229

        Look Up Alarm by Name 257

        Read Alarm Handle and Register It  
            271

        Read Alarm Name 248

        Read Alarm Object Class

            Properties 247

        Read Alarm Properties 251

        Read Alarm Semaphore 253

        Read Number of Counter Ticks

            Remaining on Alarm 255

        Rearm and Restart Alarm from

            Zone 3 261

        Test Alarm 263

        Test Alarm—Wait for Expiration  
            269

        Test Alarm—Wait Number of  
            Ticks for Expiration 267

    defining end action 236, 238

    defining object class properties 228

    defining properties 242

    expiration 236

    handle 256

    KCLASSPROP structure 228, 246

    name 256

    naming 240, 258

    properties 250

    reading name 248

    reading object class properties 246

    rearming 260

    registering 270

    remaining time 262

    services summary table 18

    starting 230

- stopping 232
- testing 262, 265, 268
- waiting for expiration 265, 268
- Alarm services
  - brief description 18
  - XX\_AbortAlarm 226
  - XX\_ArmAlarm 230
  - XX\_CancelAlarm 232
  - KS\_CloseAlarm 234
  - XX\_DefAlarmAction 236
  - XX\_DefAlarmActionArm 238
  - KS\_DefAlarmName 240
  - XX\_DefAlarmProp 242
  - KS\_DefAlarmSema 244
  - KS\_GetAlarmClassProp 246
  - KS\_GetAlarmName 248
  - XX\_GetAlarmProp 250
  - KS\_GetAlarmSema 252
  - XX\_GetAlarmTicks 254
  - INIT\_AlarmClassProp 228
  - KS\_LookupAlarm 256
  - KS\_OpenAlarm 258
  - KS\_RearmAlarm 260
  - KS\_TestAlarm 262
  - KS\_TestAlarmT 265
  - KS\_TestAlarmW 268
  - KS\_UseAlarm 270
- Alarm\_Aborted* event 244, 252
- Alarm\_Expired* event 244, 252
- ALARMPROP structure 242, 250
- allocating
  - alarm 258
  - counter 216
  - event source 179
  - exception 104
  - pipe 140
- arming alarm 230, 238

## C

- C compiler syntactical differences 3
- classes, kernel service 7
- clearing
  - counter attributes 190
  - event source attributes 158
  - thread gate bits 23
- closing
  - alarm 234
  - counter 192
  - event source 160
  - exception 88
  - pipe 110
- code examples
  - Abort Alarm 227
  - Alarm Properties Structure 242
  - Allocate and Name Alarm 259
  - Allocate and Name Counter 217
  - Allocate and Name Event Source 180
  - Allocate and Name Exception 105
  - Allocate Dynamic Pipe 141
  - Allocate System RAM from Zone 3 275
  - Arm Alarm 231
  - Arm Alarm and Define Alarm
    - Expiration Action Operation 239
  - Assign Counter Name 197
  - Assign Event Source Name 163
  - Cancel Alarm 233
  - Clear Counter Attribute 191
  - Clear Event Source Attribute 159
  - Clear Thread Gate Bits 24
  - Close Alarm 235
  - Close Counter 193
  - Close Event Source 161
  - Close Exception 89
  - Close Pipe Upon Receiving Signal 111
  - Counter Properties Structure 198

Decrement Thread Gate 27	Look Up Counter by Name 215
Define Alarm End Action Operation 237	Look Up Event Source by Name 178
Define Alarm Name 241	Look Up Exception by Name 103
Define Alarm Properties 243	Look Up Pipe by Name 139
Define Alarm Semaphore 245	Look Up Thread by Name 63
Define Counter Properties 201	Lower Current Thread Execution Priority Level 65
Define Dynamic Pipe Name 119	Object Class Properties Structure 44
Define Dynamic Thread Name 35	Obtain Elapsed Counter Ticks between Two Events 212
Define Event Source Properties 165	Perform Consumer Fast Buffer Exchange on Pipe 146
Define Exception Name 91	Perform Fast Buffer Exchange at Front of Pipe 134
Define Exception Properties 93	Perform Fast Producer Buffer Exchange on Pipe 151
Define Fatal Error Function 277	Pipe Properties Structure 115
Define Pipe End Action Operation 114	Process Source Event for Clock Tick 182
Define Pipe Properties 117	Put Full Buffer at Front of Pipe 137
Define Thread Argument Pointer 29	Put Full Buffer into Pipe 153
Define Thread Entry Point 31	Raise Current Thread Execution Priority Level 71
Define Thread Environment Arguments Pointer 33	Read Alarm Handle and Register It 271
Define Thread Properties 37	Read Alarm Name 248
Disable Thread Scheduling 38	Read Alarm Object Class Properties 247
Enable Thread Scheduling 39	Read Alarm Properties 251
Event Source Properties Structure 164	Read Alarm Semaphore 253
Exception Properties Structure 92	Read Amount of Available System RAM from Zone 3 279
Get Empty Buffer from Pipe 121	Read and Preset Thread Gate 53
Get Full Buffer from Pipe 123	Read Counter Accumulator 203
Get Thread Argument 41	Read Counter Handle and Register It 223
Increment Thread Gate 61	Read Counter Name 207
Initialize Alarm Object Class 229	Read Counter Object Class Properties 205
Initialize Counter Object Class Properties 195	Read Counter Properties 209
Initialize Event Source Object Class Properties 168	
Initialize Exception Object Class 95	
Initialize Kernel Properties 286	
Initialize Pipe Object Class 143	
Initialize Thread Object Class 83	
Look Up Alarm by Name 257	

- Read Current Thread ID 55
- Read Event Source Accumulator 170
- Read Event Source Handle and Register It 188
- Read Event Source Name 174
- Read Event Source Object Class Properties 172
- Read Event Source Properties 176
- Read Exception Handle and Register It 108
- Read Exception Name 98
- Read Exception Object Class Properties 97
- Read Exception Properties 101
- Read Fatal Error Function 278
- Read Number of Counter Ticks Remaining on Alarm 255
- Read Pipe Buffer Size 125
- Read Pipe Handle and Register It 155
- Read Pipe Name 129
- Read Pipe Object Class Properties 127
- Read Pipe Properties 131
- Read System Properties 280
- Read Thread Base Execution Priority Level 43
- Read Thread Environment Arguments Pointer 49
- Read Thread Execution Priority Level 47
- Read Thread Gate 51
- Read Thread Gate Preset 54
- Read Thread Name 57
- Read Thread Object Class Properties 46
- Read Thread Properties 59
- Read Version Number 283
- Rearm and Restart Alarm from Zone 3 261
- Return Empty Buffer to Pipe 148

- Schedule Execution of a Thread with a new Argument 77
- Schedule Thread Execution 73
- Set Counter Accumulator 219
- Set Counter Attribute Bits 221
- Set Event Source Accumulator 184
- Set Event Source Attribute Bits 186
- Set Thread Gate and Thread Gate Preset 79
- Set Thread Gate Bits 67
- Set Thread Gate Preset 81
- Set Thread Gate with Thread Gate Preset 69
- System Properties Structure 280
- Test Alarm 263
- Test Alarm—Wait for Expiration 269
- Test Alarm—Wait Number of Ticks for Expiration 267
- Thread Properties Structure 36
- Unschedule Thread Execution 85
- counter
  - allocating 216
  - clearing attributes 190
  - closing 192
  - code examples
    - Allocate and Name Counter 217
    - Assign Counter Name 197
    - Clear Counter Attribute 191
    - Close Counter 193
    - Define Counter Properties 201
    - Initialize Counter Object Class Properties 195
    - Look Up Counter by Name 215
    - Obtain Elapsed Counter Ticks between Two Events 212
    - Read Counter Accumulator 203
    - Read Counter Handle and Register It 223

- Read Counter Name 207
- Read Counter Object Class Properties 205
- Read Counter Properties 209
- Set Counter Accumulator 219
- Set Counter Attribute Bits 221
- COUNTERPROP structure 198, 208
- defining object class properties 194
- defining properties 198
- handle 214
- KCLASSPROP structure 194, 204
- name 206, 214
- naming 196, 216
- properties 208
- reading object class properties 204
- registering 222
- services summary table 16
- setting attributes 220
- Counter services
  - brief description 16
  - XX\_ClearCounterAttr 190
  - KS\_CloseCounter 192
  - KS\_DefCounterName 196
  - XX\_DefCounterProp 198
  - XX\_GetCounterAcc 202
  - KS\_GetCounterClassProp 204
  - KS\_GetCounterName 206
  - XX\_GetCounterProp 208
  - XX\_GetElapsedCounterTicks 210
  - INIT\_CounterClassProp 194
  - KS\_LookupCounter 214
  - KS\_OpenCounter 216
  - XX\_SetCounterAcc 218
  - XX\_SetCounterAttr 220
  - KS\_UseCounter 222
- COUNTERPROP structure 198, 208
- Current Task
  - in examples 3

- Current Thread
  - in examples 3
  - preemption 26

## D

- decrementing thread gate 26
- defining
  - alarm end action 236, 238
  - alarm object class properties 228
  - alarm properties 242
  - counter object class properties 194
  - counter properties 198
  - event source object class properties 167
  - event source properties 164
  - exception object class properties 94
  - exception properties 92
  - pipe object class properties 142
  - pipe properties 115
  - thread argument pointer 28
  - thread entry point 30
  - thread environment 32
  - thread object class properties 82
  - thread priority level 64, 70
  - thread properties 36
- disabling thread scheduling 38

## E

- elapsed ticks, computing 210
- enabling thread scheduling 39
- end action functions 236, 238
- environment arguments structure 32, 48
- error function, system 276
- event source
  - allocating 179
  - clearing attributes 158
  - closing 160
  - code examples

- Allocate and Name Event Source 180
- Assign Event Source Name 163
- Clear Event Source Attribute 159
- Close Event Source 161
- Define Event Source Properties 165
- Initialize Event Source Object Class Properties 168
- Look Up Event Source by Name 178
- Process Source Event for Clock Tick 182
- Read Event Source Accumulator 170
- Read Event Source Handle and Register It 188
- Read Event Source Name 174
- Read Event Source Object Class Properties 172
- Read Event Source Properties 176
- Set Event Source Accumulator 184
- Set Event Source Attribute Bits 186
- defining object class properties 167
- defining properties 164
- EVNTSRCPROP structure 164, 175
- handle 177
- KCLASSPROP structure 167, 171
- name 173, 177
- naming 162, 179
- properties 175
- reading object class properties 171
- registering 187
- services summary table 14
- setting attributes 185
- Event Source services
  - brief description 14
  - XX\_ClearEventSourceAttr 158
  - KS\_CloseEventSource 160
  - KS\_DefEventSourceName 162
  - XX\_DefEventSourceProp 164
  - XX\_GetEventSourceAcc 169
  - KS\_GetEventSourceClassProp 171
  - KS\_GetEventSourceName 173
  - XX\_GetEventSourceProp 175
  - INIT\_EventSourceClassProp 167
  - KS\_LookupEventSource 177
  - KS\_OpenEventSource 179
  - XX\_ProcessEventSourceTick 181
  - XX\_SetEventSourceAcc 183
  - XX\_SetEventSourceAttr 185
  - KS\_UseEventSource 187
- events
  - Alarm\_Aborted* 244, 252
  - Alarm\_Expired* 244, 252
  - elapsed ticks between 210
  - processing 181
- EVNTSRCPROP structure 164, 175
- examples, list of xiii
- exception
  - allocating 104
  - closing 88
  - code examples
    - Allocate and Name Exception 105
    - Close Exception 89
    - Define Exception Name 91
    - Define Exception Properties 93
    - Initialize Exception Object Class 95
    - Look Up Exception by Name 103
    - Read Exception Handle and Register It 108
    - Read Exception Name 98
    - Read Exception Object Class Properties 97
    - Read Exception Properties 101
  - defining object class properties 94
  - defining properties 92

- EXCPTNPROP structure 92, 100
- handle 102
- KCLASSPROP structure 94, 96
- name 98, 102
- naming 90, 104
- properties 100
- reading object class properties 96
- registering 107
- services summary table 11

#### Exception services

- brief description 11
- KS\_CloseException 88
- KS\_DefExceptionName 90
- XX\_DefExceptionProp 92
- KS\_GetExceptionClassProp 96
- KS\_GetExceptionName 98
- KS\_GetExceptionProp 100
- TS\_GetExceptionProp 100
- INIT\_ExceptionClassProp 94
- KS\_LookupException 102
- KS\_OpenException 104
- KS\_UseException 107

- EXCPTNPROP structure 92, 100

## F

- function call, general form 4
- function prototypes 2
- function, system error 276

## H

- handle
  - alarm 256
  - counter 214
  - event source 177
  - exception 102
  - pipe 138
  - thread 62

## I

- incrementing thread gate 60
- INIT\_AlarmClassProp 228
- INIT\_CounterClassProp 194
- INIT\_EventSourceClassProp 167
- INIT\_ExceptionClassProp 94
- INIT\_PipeClassProp 142
- INIT\_SysProp 284
- INIT\_ThreadClassProp 82
- IS\_ClearThreadGateBits 23
- IS\_DecrThreadGate 26
- IS\_DefThreadArg 28
- IS\_DefThreadEntry 30
- IS\_GetCounterAcc 202
- IS\_GetEmptyPipeBuf 120
- IS\_GetEventSourceAcc 169
- IS\_GetFullPipeBuf 122
- IS\_GetPipeBufSize 124
- IS\_IncrThreadGate 60
- IS\_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 132
- IS\_JamFullPipeBuf 136
- IS\_ORThreadGateBits 66
- IS\_ProcessEventSourceTick 181
- IS\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf 144
- IS\_PutEmptyPipeBuf 147
- IS\_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 149
- IS\_PutFullPipeBuf 152
- IS\_ScheduleThread 72
- IS\_ScheduleThreadArg 75
- IS\_UnscheduleThread 84

## K

- KCLASSPROP structure
  - alarm 228, 246
  - counter 194, 204
  - event source 167, 171
  - exception 94, 96

- pipe 126, 142
- thread 44, 82
- kernel component, **RTXC/ss** 8
- kernel service
  - arguments 5
  - classes 7
  - description format 2
  - function call general form 4
  - function prototypes 2
  - INIT\_AlarmClassProp 228
  - INIT\_CounterClassProp 194
  - INIT\_EventSourceClassProp 167
  - INIT\_ExceptionClassProp 94
  - INIT\_PipeClassProp 142
  - INIT\_SysProp 284
  - INIT\_ThreadClassProp 82
  - KS\_AllocSysRAM 274
  - KS\_CloseAlarm 234
  - KS\_CloseCounter 192
  - KS\_CloseEventSource 160
  - KS\_CloseException 88
  - KS\_ClosePipe 110
  - KS\_DefAlarmName 240
  - KS\_DefAlarmSema 244
  - KS\_DefCounterName 196
  - KS\_DefEventSourceName 162
  - KS\_DefExceptionName 90
  - KS\_DefPipeName 118
  - KS\_DefThreadName 34
  - KS\_GetAlarmClassProp 246
  - KS\_GetAlarmName 248
  - KS\_GetAlarmSema 252
  - KS\_GetCounterClassProp 204
  - KS\_GetCounterName 206
  - KS\_GetEventSourceClassProp 171
  - KS\_GetEventSourceName 173

- KS\_GetExceptionClassProp 96
- KS\_GetExceptionName 98
- KS\_GetExceptionProp 100
- KS\_GetPipeClassProp 126
- KS\_GetPipeName 128
- KS\_GetSysProp 280
- KS\_GetThreadName 56
- KS\_GetVersion 282
- KS\_LookupAlarm 256
- KS\_LookupCounter 214
- KS\_LookupEventSource 177
- KS\_LookupException 102
- KS\_LookupPipe 138
- KS\_LookupThread 62
- KS\_OpenAlarm 258
- KS\_OpenCounter 216
- KS\_OpenEventSource 179
- KS\_OpenException 104
- KS\_OpenPipe 140
- KS\_RearmAlarm 260
- KS\_TestAlarm 262
- KS\_TestAlarmT 265
- KS\_TestAlarmW 268
- KS\_UseAlarm 270
- KS\_UseCounter 222
- KS\_UseEventSource 187
- KS\_UseException 107
- KS\_UsePipe 154
- prefix 4
- return value types table 6
- TS\_DisableThreadScheduler 38
- TS\_EnableThreadScheduler 39
- TS\_GetExceptionProp 100
- TS\_GetThreadArg 40
- TS\_GetThreadBaseLevel 42
- TS\_GetThreadCurrentLevel 47
- TS\_GetThreadGateLoadPreset 52



TS_GetThreadID 55	XX_GetThreadEnvArg 48
TS_LowerThreadLevel 64	XX_GetThreadGate 50
TS_RaiseThreadLevel 70	XX_GetThreadGatePreset 54
XX_AbortAlarm 226	XX_GetThreadProp 58
XX_ArmAlarm 230	XX_IncrThreadGate 60
XX_CancelAlarm 232	XX_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 132
XX_ClearCounterAttr 190	XX_JamFullPipeBuf 136
XX_ClearEventSourceAttr 158	XX_ORThreadGateBits 66
XX_ClearThreadGateBits 23	XX_PresetThreadGate 68
XX_DecrThreadGate 26	XX_ProcessEventSourceTick 181
XX_DefAlarmAction 236	XX_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf 144
XX_DefAlarmActionArm 238	XX_PutEmptyPipeBuf 147
XX_DefAlarmProp 242	XX_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 149
XX_DefCounterProp 198	XX_PutFullPipeBuf 152
XX_DefEventSourceProp 164	XX_ScheduleThread 72
XX_DefExceptionProp 92	XX_ScheduleThreadArg 75
XX_DefFatalErrorHandler 276	XX_SetCounterAcc 218
XX_DefPipeAction 112	XX_SetCounterAttr 220
XX_DefPipeProp 115	XX_SetEventSourceAcc 183
XX_DefThreadArg 28	XX_SetEventSourceAttr 185
XX_DefThreadEntry 30	XX_SetThreadGate 78
XX_DefThreadEnvArg 32	XX_SetThreadGatePreset 80
XX_DefThreadProp 36	XX_UnscheduleThread 84
XX_GetAlarmProp 250	kernel service return code 5
XX_GetAlarmTicks 254	kernel version number 282
XX_GetCounterAcc 202	KS_AbortAlarm 226
XX_GetCounterProp 208	KS_AllocSysRAM 274
XX_GetElapsedCounterTicks 210	KS_ArmAlarm 230
XX_GetEmptyPipeBuf 120	KS_CancelAlarm 232
XX_GetEventSourceAcc 169	KS_ClearCounterAttr 190
XX_GetEventSourceProp 175	KS_ClearEventSourceAttr 158
XX_GetFatalErrorHandler 278	KS_ClearThreadGateBits 23
XX_GetFreeSysRAMSize 279	KS_CloseAlarm 234
XX_GetFullPipeBuf 122	KS_CloseCounter 192
XX_GetPipeBufSize 124	KS_CloseEventSource 160
XX_GetPipeProp 130	KS_CloseException 88
XX_GetThreadClassProp 44	KS_ClosePipe 110

KS_DecrThreadGate 26	KS_GetExceptionProp 100
KS_DefAlarmAction 236	KS_GetFatalErrorHandler 278
KS_DefAlarmActionArm 238	KS_GetFreeSysRAMSize 279
KS_DefAlarmName 240	KS_GetFullPipeBuf 122
KS_DefAlarmProp 242	KS_GetPipeBufSize 124
KS_DefAlarmSema 244	KS_GetPipeClassProp 126
KS_DefCounterName 196	KS_GetPipeName 128
KS_DefCounterProp 198	KS_GetPipeProp 130
KS_DefEventSourceName 162	KS_GetSysProp 280
KS_DefEventSourceProp 164	KS_GetThreadClassProp 44
KS_DefExceptionName 90	KS_GetThreadEnvArg 48
KS_DefExceptionProp 92	KS_GetThreadGate 50
KS_DefFatalErrorHandler 276	KS_GetThreadGatePreset 54
KS_DefPipeName 118	KS_GetThreadName 56
KS_DefPipeProp 115	KS_GetThreadProp 58
KS_DefThreadArg 28	KS_GetVersion 282
KS_DefThreadEntry 30	KS_IncrThreadGate 60
KS_DefThreadEnvArg 32	KS_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 132
KS_DefThreadName 34	KS_JamFullPipeBuf 136
KS_DefThreadProp 36	KS_LookupAlarm 256
KS_GetAlarmClassProp 246	KS_LookupCounter 214
KS_GetAlarmName 248	KS_LookupEventSource 177
KS_GetAlarmProp 250	KS_LookupException 102
KS_GetAlarmSema 252	KS_LookupPipe 138
KS_GetAlarmTicks 254	KS_LookupThread 62
KS_GetCounterAcc 202	KS_OpenAlarm 258
KS_GetCounterClassProp 204	KS_OpenCounter 216
KS_GetCounterName 206	KS_OpenEventSource 179
KS_GetCounterProp 208	KS_OpenException 104
KS_GetElapsedCounterTicks 210	KS_OpenPipe 140
KS_GetEmptyPipeBuf 120	KS_ORThreadGateBits 66
KS_GetEventSourceAcc 169	KS_PresetThreadGate 68
KS_GetEventSourceClassProp 171	KS_ProcessEventSourceTick 181
KS_GetEventSourceName 173	KS_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf 144
KS_GetEventSourceProp 175	KS_PutEmptyPipeBuf 147
KS_GetExceptionClassProp 96	KS_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 149
KS_GetExceptionName 98	KS_PutFullPipeBuf 152

- KS\_RearmAlarm 260
- KS\_ScheduleThread 72
- KS\_ScheduleThreadArg 75
- KS\_SetCounterAcc 218
- KS\_SetCounterAttr 220
- KS\_SetEventSourceAcc 183
- KS\_SetEventSourceAttr 185
- KS\_SetThreadGate 78
- KS\_SetThreadGatePreset 80
- KS\_TestAlarm 262
- KS\_TestAlarmT 265
- KS\_TestAlarmW 268
- KS\_UseAlarm 270
- KS\_UseCounter 222
- KS\_UseEventSource 187
- KS\_UseException 107
- KS\_UsePipe 154
- KSRC 5

## L

- list of examples xiii
- list of tables xi
- loading Current Thread gate 52

## N

- name
  - alarm 248, 256
  - counter 206, 214
  - event source 173, 177
  - exception 98, 102
  - pipe 128
  - thread 56, 62
- naming
  - alarm 240, 258
  - counter 196, 216
  - event source 162, 179
  - exception 90, 104

- pipe 118, 140
- thread 34

## O

- object class properties
  - alarm 246
  - Alarm class 228
  - counter 194, 204
  - event source 167, 171
  - exception 94, 96
  - pipe 126, 142
  - thread 44, 82

## P

- pipe 152
  - allocating 140
  - closing 110
  - code examples
    - Allocate Dynamic Pipe 141
    - Close Pipe Upon Receiving Signal 111
    - Define Dynamic Pipe Name 119
    - Define Pipe End Action Operation 114
    - Define Pipe Properties 117
    - Get Empty Buffer from Pipe 121
    - Get Full Buffer from Pipe 123
    - Initialize Pipe Object Class 143
    - Look Up Pipe by Name 139
    - Perform Consumer Fast Buffer Exchange on Pipe 146
    - Perform Fast Buffer Exchange at Front of Pipe 134
    - Perform Fast Producer Buffer Exchange on Pipe 151
    - Put Full Buffer at Front of Pipe 137
    - Put Full Buffer into Pipe 153
    - Read Pipe Buffer Size 125

- Read Pipe Handle and Register It 155
- Read Pipe Name 129
- Read Pipe Object Class Properties 127
- Read Pipe Properties 131
- Return Empty Buffer to Pipe 148
- defining properties 115
- getting empty buffer 120
- getting empty buffers 132, 136, 149
- getting full buffer 122
- getting full buffers 144
- KCLASSPROP structure 126, 142
- name 128
- naming 118, 140
- object class properties 142
- PIPEPROP structure 115, 130
- properties 130
- putting empty buffers 144
- putting full buffers 132, 136, 149, 152
- reading object class properties 126
- reading usable buffer size 124
- registering 154
- returning empty 147
- services summary table 12
- Pipe services
  - brief description 12
  - KS\_ClosePipe 110
  - XX\_DefPipeAction 112
  - KS\_DefPipeName 118
  - XX\_DefPipeProp 115
  - XX\_GetEmptyPipeBuf 120
  - XX\_GetFullPipeBuf 122
  - XX\_GetPipeBufSize 124
  - KS\_GetPipeClassProp 126
  - KS\_GetPipeName 128
  - XX\_GetPipeProp 130
  - INIT\_PipeClassProp 142

- XX\_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 132
- XX\_JamFullPipeBuf 136
- KS\_LookupPipe 138
- KS\_OpenPipe 140
- XX\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf 144
- XX\_PutEmptyPipeBuf 147
- XX\_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 149
- XX\_PutFullPipeBuf 152
- KS\_UsePipe 154
- PIPEPROP structure 115, 130
- preemption
  - Current Thread 26
  - thread 23
- priority level
  - lowering thread 64
  - raising thread 70
- properties
  - alarm 242, 250
  - alarm object class 228, 246
  - counter 198, 208
  - counter object class 194, 204
  - event source 164, 175
  - event source object class 167, 171
  - exception 92, 100
  - exception object class 94, 96
  - pipe 130
  - pipe object class 126
  - system 280
  - thread 58
  - thread object class 44

## R

- raising thread priority level 70
- RAM
  - free 279
  - obtaining size of free 279
- reading

- alarm object class properties 246
- counter object class properties 204
- Current Thread gate preset 52
- event source object class properties 171
- exception object class properties 96
- pipe object class properties 126
- pipe usable buffer size 124
- thread base priority level 42
- thread current priority level 47
- thread environment arguments pointer 48
- thread environment arguments
  - structure 48
- thread gate 50
- thread gate preset 54
- thread handle 62
- thread ID 55
- thread name 56
- thread object class properties 44
- thread properties 58
- rearming alarm 260
- registering
  - alarm 270
  - counter 222
  - event source 187
  - exception 107
  - pipe 154
- resetting thread gate 50
- RTOS Software Development Kit 2
- RTXC/ss** component 8
- rtxcapi.h** file 2

## S

- scheduling
  - thread 23, 26, 38, 39, 60, 66, 72
  - thread with new argument 75
- SDK. *See* RTOS Software Development Kit

- SELFTASK 3
- SELFTHREAD 3
- service prefix 4
- setting
  - counter attributes 220
  - event source attributes 185
  - thread gate and preset 78
  - thread gate bits
    - thread 66
  - thread gate preset 80
- special service
  - code examples
    - Allocate System RAM from Zone 3 275
    - Define Fatal Error Function 277
    - Initialize Kernel Properties 286
    - Read Amount of Available System RAM from Zone 3 279
    - Read Fatal Error Function 278
    - Read System Properties 280
    - Read Version Number 283
- Special services
  - brief description 20
  - KS\_AllocSysRAM 274
  - XX\_DefFatalErrorHandler 276
  - XX\_GetFatalErrorHandler 278
  - XX\_GetFreeSysRAMSize 279
  - KS\_GetSysProp 280
  - KS\_GetVersion 282
  - INIT\_SysProp 284
  - summary table 20
- starting alarm 230
- stopping alarm 232
- structure
  - alarm KCLASSPROP 228, 246
  - ALARMPROP 242, 250
  - counter KCLASSPROP 194, 204
  - COUNTERPROP 198, 208

- environment arguments 32, 48
- event source KCLASSPROP 167, 171
- EVNTSRCPROP 164, 175
- Exception EXCPTNPROP 100
- exception KCLASSPROP 94, 96
- EXCPTNPROP 92
- pipe KCLASSPROP 126, 142
- PIPEPROP 115, 130
- SYSPPROP 280, 284
- Thread environment arguments 32
- thread KCLASSPROP 44, 82
- Thread object class properties 44, 82
- Thread properties 36, 44, 58
- Thread property 58
- THREADPROP 36, 58
- SYSPPROP structure 280, 284
- system error function 276, 278
- system properties 280
  - SYSPPROP structure 280, 284

## T

table

- Alarm Services Summary 18
- Counter Services Summary 16
- Event Source Services Summary 14
- Exception Services Summary 11
- Kernel Service Return Value Types 6
- Pipe Services Summary 12
- Special Services Summary 20
- Thread Management Services Summary 8

tables, list of xi

testing alarm 262, 265, 268

thread

- argument pointer 40
- code examples
  - Clear Thread Gate Bits 24

- Decrement Thread Gate 27
- Define Dynamic Thread Name 35
- Define Thread Argument Pointer 29
- Define Thread Entry Point 31
- Define Thread Environment
  - Arguments Pointer 33
- Define Thread Properties 37
- Disable Thread Scheduling 38
- Enable Thread Scheduling 39
- Get Thread Argument 41
- Increment Thread Gate 61
- Initialize Thread Object Class 83
- Look Up Thread by Name 63
- Lower Current Thread Execution
  - Priority Level 65
- Raise Current Thread Execution
  - Priority Level 71
- Read and Preset Thread Gate 53
- Read Current Thread ID 55
- Read Thread Base Execution
  - Priority Level 43
- Read Thread Environment
  - Arguments Pointer 49
- Read Thread Execution Priority
  - Level 47
- Read Thread Gate 51
- Read Thread Gate Preset 54
- Read Thread Name 57
- Read Thread Object Class
  - Properties 46
- Read Thread Properties 59
- Schedule Execution of a Thread
  - with a new Argument 77
- Schedule Thread Execution 73
- Set Thread Gate and Thread Gate
  - Preset 79
- Set Thread Gate Bits 67
- Set Thread Gate Preset 81
- Set Thread Gate with Thread Gate

- Preset 69
  - Unschedule Thread Execution 85
- defining argument pointer 28
- defining entry point 30
- defining environment 32
- defining properties 36
- disabling scheduling 38
- enabling scheduling 39
- handle 138
- KCLASSPROP structure 44, 82
- lowering priority level 64
- name 56, 62
- naming 34
- object class properties 82
- preemption 23, 26
- properties 58
- raising priority level 70
- reading base priority level 42
- reading current priority level 47
- reading environment arguments pointer 48
- reading environment arguments structure 48
- reading handle 62
- reading ID 55
- reading name 56
- reading object class properties 44
- reading properties 58
- scheduling 23, 26, 38, 39, 60, 66, 72
- scheduling with new argument 75
- services summary table 8
- unscheduling 84
- Thread environment arguments structure 32
- thread gate
  - clearing bits 23
  - decrementing 26
  - loading Current Thread gate 52
  - reading and resetting 50
  - reading Current Thread preset 52
  - reading preset 54
  - setting bits 66
  - setting gate and preset 78
  - setting preset 80
- thread gate, incrementing 60
- Thread object class properties structure 44, 82
- Thread properties structure 36, 58
- Thread property structure 44
- Thread services
  - brief description 8
  - XX\_ClearThreadGateBits 23
  - XX\_DecrThreadGate 26
  - XX\_DefThreadArg 28
  - XX\_DefThreadEntry 30
  - XX\_DefThreadEnvArg 32
  - KS\_DefThreadName 34
  - XX\_DefThreadProp 36
  - TS\_DisableThreadScheduler 38
  - TS\_EnableThreadScheduler 39
  - TS\_GetThreadArg 40
  - TS\_GetThreadBaseLevel 42
  - XX\_GetThreadClassProp 44
  - TS\_GetThreadCurrentLevel 47
  - XX\_GetThreadEnvArg 48
  - XX\_GetThreadGate 50
  - TS\_GetThreadGateLoadPreset 52
  - XX\_GetThreadGatePreset 54
  - TS\_GetThreadID 55
  - KS\_GetThreadName 56
  - XX\_GetThreadProp 58
  - XX\_IncrThreadGate 60
  - INIT\_ThreadClassProp 82
  - KS\_LookupThread 62
  - TS\_LowerThreadLevel 64

XX_ORThreadGateBits 66	TS_GetEventSourceProp 175
XX_PresetThreadGate 68	TS_GetExceptionProp 100
TS_RaiseThreadLevel 70	TS_GetFatalErrorHandler 278
XX_ScheduleThread 72	TS_GetFreeSysRAMSize 279
XX_ScheduleThreadArg 75	TS_GetFullPipeBuf 122
XX_SetThreadGate 78	TS_GetPipeBufSize 124
XX_SetThreadGatePreset 80	TS_GetPipeProp 130
XX_UnscheduleThread 84	TS_GetThreadArg 40
THREADPROP structure 36, 58	TS_GetThreadBaseLevel 42
TS_AbortAlarm 226	TS_GetThreadClassProp 44
TS_ArmAlarm 230	TS_GetThreadCurrentLevel 47
TS_CancelAlarm 232	TS_GetThreadEnvArg 48
TS_ClearCounterAttr 190	TS_GetThreadGate 50
TS_ClearEventSourceAttr 158	TS_GetThreadGateLoadPreset 52
TS_ClearThreadGateBits 23	TS_GetThreadGatePreset 54
TS_DecrThreadGate 26	TS_GetThreadID 55
TS_DefAlarmAction 236	TS_GetThreadProp 58
TS_DefAlarmActionArm 238	TS_IncrThreadGate 60
TS_DefAlarmProp 242	TS_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 132
TS_DefCounterProp 198	TS_JamFullPipeBuf 136
TS_DefEventSourceProp 164	TS_LowerThreadLevel 64
TS_DefExceptionProp 92	TS_ORThreadGateBits 66
TS_DefFatalErrorHandler 276	TS_PresetThreadGate 68
TS_DefPipeProp 115	TS_ProcessEventSourceTick 181
TS_DefThreadArg 28	TS_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf 144
TS_DefThreadEntry 30	TS_PutEmptyPipeBuf 147
TS_DefThreadEnvArg 32	TS_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 149
TS_DefThreadProp 36	TS_PutFullPipeBuf 152
TS_DisableThreadScheduler 38	TS_RaiseThreadLevel 70
TS_EnableThreadScheduler 39	TS_ScheduleThread 72
TS_GetAlarmProp 250	TS_ScheduleThreadArg 75
TS_GetAlarmTicks 254	TS_SetCounterAcc 218
TS_GetCounterAcc 202	TS_SetCounterAttr 220
TS_GetCounterProp 208	TS_SetEventSourceAcc 183
TS_GetElapsedCounterTicks 210	TS_SetEventSourceAttr 185
TS_GetEmptyPipeBuf 120	TS_SetThreadGate 78
TS_GetEventSourceAcc 169	TS_SetThreadGatePreset 80



TS\_UnscheduleThread 84

## U

unscheduling thread 84

## V

version number, kernel 282

## X

XX\_AbortAlarm 226  
XX\_ArmAlarm 230  
XX\_CancelAlarm 232  
XX\_ClearCounterAttr 190  
XX\_ClearEventSourceAttr 158  
XX\_ClearThreadGateBits 23  
XX\_DecrThreadGate 26  
XX\_DefAlarmAction 236  
XX\_DefAlarmActionArm 238  
XX\_DefAlarmProp 242  
XX\_DefCounterProp 198  
XX\_DefEventSourceProp 164  
XX\_DefExceptionProp 92  
XX\_DefFatalErrorHandler 276  
XX\_DefPipeAction 112  
XX\_DefPipeProp 115  
XX\_DefThreadArg 28  
XX\_DefThreadEntry 30  
XX\_DefThreadEnvArg 32  
XX\_DefThreadProp 36  
XX\_GetAlarmProp 250  
XX\_GetAlarmTicks 254  
XX\_GetCounterAcc 202  
XX\_GetCounterProp 208  
XX\_GetElapsedCounterTicks 210  
XX\_GetEmptyPipeBuf 120  
XX\_GetEventSourceAcc 169

XX\_GetEventSourceProp 175  
XX\_GetFatalErrorHandler 278  
XX\_GetFreeSysRAMSize 279  
XX\_GetFullPipeBuf 122  
XX\_GetPipeBufSize 124  
XX\_GetPipeProp 130  
XX\_GetThreadClassProp 44  
XX\_GetThreadEnvArg 48  
XX\_GetThreadGate 50  
XX\_GetThreadGatePreset 54  
XX\_GetThreadProp 58  
XX\_IncrThreadGate 60  
XX\_JamFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 132  
XX\_JamFullPipeBuf 136  
XX\_ORThreadGateBits 66  
XX\_PresetThreadGate 68  
XX\_ProcessEventSourceTick 181  
XX\_PutEmptyGetFullPipeBuf 144  
XX\_PutEmptyPipeBuf 147  
XX\_PutFullGetEmptyPipeBuf 149  
XX\_PutFullPipeBuf 152  
XX\_ScheduleThread 72  
XX\_ScheduleThreadArg 75  
XX\_SetCounterAcc 218  
XX\_SetCounterAttr 220  
XX\_SetEventSourceAcc 183  
XX\_SetEventSourceAttr 185  
XX\_SetThreadGate 78  
XX\_SetThreadGatePreset 80  
XX\_UnscheduleThread 84

## Z

zones

listing services with more than one 4  
service prefix 4